

# 湖南省普通高中学业水平考试要点解读

## 英 语

湖南省教育厅版权所有  
www.hunanedu.net  
免费赠送

湖南省普通高中学业水平考试大纲编审组编写

二〇〇九年二月

# 前言

---

依据《2009 年湖南省普通高中学业水平考试大纲》（以下简称《考纲》），我们编写了《2009 年湖南省普通高中学业水平考试要点解读》（以下简称《解读》），作为与《考纲》配套使用的学业水平考试复习辅导用书。《解读》秉着“构建学科知识要点、解读要点知识内涵、点拨学习方法、激发学习兴趣、树立考试信心、促进全面发展”的理念，为实现回归基础教育本源，推动新的质量评价体系建设，推进新课程实施发挥重要作用。

《解读》按照学科必修学分模块的篇章顺序，以“学习目标、要点解读、学法指导、梯度练习、模块检测”五个板块构成，体例新颖、层次分明、适用性强。它依据《考纲》提出学习目标，明确能力层次要求，以增强学生学习的目的性；通过对学科主干知识进行全面归纳、梳理、构建，解读要点知识内涵，强调了知识点之间的内在联系及知识与方法的迁移应用，突出在剖析典型案例中提炼学法，并进行恰到好处的“点”、“拨”，给出学习指导；注重帮助学生拓展思维空间，提高学习能力。同时，还精心设计了难易适度且呈梯度分布的习题和检测题，以满足学生学习能力要求的层次性和学习水平的差异性，有利增强学生的考试信心，促使学生快乐学习、从容应考。

编写时间仓促，书中如有不足之处，敬请广大师生提出宝贵意见。

2009 年湖南省普通高中学业水平考试大纲编审组

二〇〇九年二月

## 目录

前 言 .....	2
-----------	---

### 词汇部分

Module 1	Unit 1	School Life.....	5
Module 1	Unit 2	Growing Pains .....	17
Module 1	Unit 3	Looking good, feeling good.....	25
Module 2	Unit 1	Tales of the unexplained .....	34
Module 2	Unit 2	Wish you were here .....	42
Module 2	Unit 3	Amazing people .....	50
Module 3	Unit1	The world of our senses .....	60
Module 3	Unit 2	Language .....	68
Module 3	Unit 3	Back to the past .....	77
Module 4	Unit 1	Advertising.....	83
Module 4	Unit 2	Sporting events.....	91
Module 4	Unit 3	Tomorrow's world.....	98
Module 5	Unit 1	Getting along with others.....	107
Module 5	Unit 2	The environment .....	115
Module 5	Unit 3	Science versus nature.....	124

### 语法部分

(一) 句子 .....	134
(二) 英文词类 .....	138
(三) 短语 .....	147
(四) 简单句.....	151
(五) 谓语动词语态和时态 .....	154
(六) 情态助动词 .....	163

(七) 非谓语动词 .....	170
(八) 一致 .....	174
(九) 主谓倒装 .....	178
(十) 复杂句 .....	181
(十一) 主从复合句及“定语从句” .....	182
(十二) 状语从句 .....	187
(十三) 名词性从句 .....	194
(十四) it 的用法和强调句 .....	197
写作部分 .....	202
模拟试卷一 .....	208
模拟试卷二 .....	220
参 考 答 案 .....	233

# 词汇部分

## MODULE 1 UNIT 1 SCHOOL LIFE

### 一、【学习目标】

1. 掌握和校园生活有关的常用单词、词组与句型。
2. 学会运用所学词汇描述校园生活和学校设施；学会写通知和海报等。

#### ★本单元重要词组：

at ease with 和.....相处不拘束	be happy with 对.....感到满意
the way to do sth 做某事的方法	earn respect from 赢得.....的尊敬
achieve high grades 获得高分	sound like 听起来象
used to do sth 过去常常做某事	school hours 学校作息时间
at lunch time 在吃午饭的时候	for free 免费
at the end of term 在学期末	get a general idea 了解大意
as well as 除.....之外还有	key words 关键词
word by word 逐字逐句地	break times 课间休息时间
upon doing sth 刚一做某事	donate ...to... 把.....捐赠给.....
develop an interest in 培养对.....的兴趣	inform sb of sth 告知某人某事
more than 不仅仅	make a decision 作决定
pay attention to 注意	consist of 包含，由...构成
be responsible for 对.....负责	come up with 想出
sign up 报名参加	
base ...on ... 把.....建立在.....基础之上	
be available to sb 对某人来说可以使用的	

## 二、【要点解读】

### 1. attend v. 出席, 参加, 到场; 注意; 照料

#### [短语搭配]

attend school/class/church 上学/上课/去教堂做礼拜

attend a meeting/lecture/wedding/ 参加会议/听讲座/参加婚礼

attend to sb/sth 注意; 倾听; 专心干; 照料, 处理

attend (on/upon) sb 伺候/照顾某人

#### [典型例句]

He'll attend an important meeting tomorrow.

他明天要参加一个重要的会议。

If you don't attend to your teacher, you'll never learn anything.

你要是不注意听老师讲, 你就会什么也学不到。

I may be late—I have one or two things to attend to.

我可能会迟到, 我还有一两件事要处理。

The patient has three nurses attending (on) her.

那个病人有三个护士看护。

#### [词语辨析]

**join, join in, take part in 和 attend 的用法比较**

▲join 有两个用法:

1. 指加入某个党派, 团体组织等, 成为其成员之一。如:

When did your brother join the army?

你哥哥什么时候参军的?

2. 和某人一道做某事, 其结构为: join sb in (doing) sth, 根据上下文, in (doing) sth 也可以省去。

Will you join us in the discussion?

你参加我们的讨论吗？

We're going to the East Lake Park on Sunday. Will you join us?

我们打算星期天去东湖公园。你跟我们一道去好吗？

▲join in 多指参加小规模的活动，如“球赛、游戏”等，常用于日常口语。如：

Come along, and join in the ball game.

快，来参加球赛。

▲take part in 指参加会议或群众性活动等，着重主语参加该项活动并在活动中发挥作用。

We'll take part in social practice during the summer vacation.

暑假期间我们将参加社会实践。

注：take part in 是惯用词组，part 前一般不用冠词，但 part 前有形容词修饰时，要用不定冠词。

Lincoln took an active part in political activities and was strongly against slavery.

林肯积极参加政治活动，强烈反对奴隶制。

▲attend 是正式用语，及物动词，指参加会议，婚礼，葬礼，典礼；去上课，上学；听报告等。句子的主语只是去听，去看，自己不一定起积极作用。如：

I attended his lecture.

我听了他的讲课。

## **2. prepare v. 准备, 预备**

### **[基本构词]**

preparation n. 准备, 预备

prepared adj. 准备好的

### **[短语搭配]**

prepare for=make preparations for 为.....做准备

prepare sb for/ to do sth 使某人为.....做准备

prepare sb sth 为某人准备.....

be prepared for 对.....做好准备

be prepared to do sth 愿意做某事，乐意做某事

prepare a meal / one's lesson 准备饭（功课）

**[典型例句]**

The secretary has prepared the president a long report.

= The secretary has prepared a long report for the president.

秘书已为董事长准备好了一份长篇报告稿。

Will you help me prepare for the get-together of the old classmates?

你能否帮我在这次老同学聚会做好准备工作？

We are prepared to supply the goods you ask for.

我们能够且愿意供应你要的货物。

**3. experience n. [C] 经历，阅历 [U] 经验 v. 体验；经历**

**[基本构词]**

experienced adj. 有经验的

**[短语搭配]**

have experience in /of doing sth 有做某事的经验

be experienced in /at doing sth 做某事有经验

experienced teachers 有经验的教师

**[典型例句]**

I know from experience that he will arrive late.

据我的经验，他会迟到的。

He had many interesting experiences while travelling in Africa.

他在非洲旅行时，有很多有趣的经历。

He experienced great hardships for the first time in his life.

他有生以来第一次体验到巨大的艰苦。

He has had much experience in /of this kind of work.



他有丰富的经验做这项工作。

#### **4. develop v. 培养，养成；发展，开发；冲洗照片等**

##### **[基本构词]**

development n. 发展，进展，开发

developed adj. 先进的，发达的

developing adj. 发展中的

##### **[短语搭配]**

develop a film 冲洗胶片

develop a mine 开矿

develop into 发展成，变成

be under development 在发展中

a developing/developed country 发展中的国家/发达国家

##### **[典型例句]**

The best way to make sure that we will feel and look fine is to develop healthy eating habits.

确保我们身体健康的一个最好方法就是养成良好的饮食习惯。

Can you develop this film for us?

你能为我们冲洗这胶卷吗？

He says his country wants to develop its traditional friendship with China.

他说他们的国家希望发展和中国传统的友谊。

Parents watch the development of a baby with interest.

父母饶有兴趣地关注着婴儿的生长。

#### **5. attention n. 注意，关注**

##### **[基本构词]**

attend v. 看护，照料，服侍；出席，参加

attentively ad. 注意地

##### **[短语搭配]**

pay attention to (doing) sth 注意（做）某事

draw / attract/ call one's attention (to sth) 吸引某人的注意

fix / focus one's attention on sth 集中注意力于.....

### [典型例句]

Pay attention to the road signs.

注意路牌。

He called our attention to what he said.

他提醒我们注意他说的话。

The rising unemployment drew his attention.

失业率日益升高引起了他的注意。

He fixed his attention on writing.

他专心写作。

### 6. please v. 使某人满意或愉快

#### [基本构词]

pleased adj. 欣喜的，满意地

pleasant adj. 舒适的，讨人喜欢的

pleasure n. 高兴，满足，乐事

#### [短语搭配]

please sb 取悦某人

be pleased with sb 对某人感到满意

be pleased with /about/at sth 对.....高兴（满意）

be pleased to do sth 高兴地做.....

### [典型例句]

He looked very pleased with himself so I knew he had passed his driving test.

他看来得意洋洋,所以我知道他已通过驾驶考试。

I am very pleased with what he has done.

我对他的工作很满意。

I am very pleased to meet you.

很高兴遇见你。

I am very pleased (that) you've decided to come.

你决定来我很高兴。

The weather there isn't very pleasant.

那儿的气候不太好。

It gives me great pleasure to keep plants and grow flowers at home.

在家养花种草给我很多乐趣。

It is a pleasure to hear her sing.

听她唱歌是一桩乐事。

**7. regret v. 感到遗憾, 抱歉, 后悔, 惋惜 n. 遗憾, 悔恨, 抱歉, 歉意**

**[短语搭配]**

without regret 毫无遗憾地

to one's regret 令某人遗憾的是

**[典型例句]**

Her regret was that she never had the chance of seeing him.

她遗憾的是从来没有机会见到他。

I regret having done this, but I had no choice.

我很遗憾做了这件事, 但我没有别的办法。

**[词语辨析]**

▲regret to do 对要做的事遗憾(未做)

▲regret doing/having done 对做过的事遗憾、后悔(已做)

I regret to tell you that you're not fit for the job.

很遗憾地告诉你, 你不适合这个工作。

To this day I do not regret having made the remark.

到今天我也不后悔说了那番话。

## 8. require v. 要求；需要

### [基本构词]

requirement n. (可数)必需（品）；必要条件

### [典型例句]

This plan requires careful consideration.

这个计划还需要仔细考虑。

These flowers **require watering**.

这些花需要浇水了。（doing 含有被动的意思）

All the members are required to attend the meeting.

要求所有的会员参加会议。

The court required that he **should pay** the fine.

法院下令他缴付罚款。（宾语从句的谓语动词用 **should+动词原形**）

## 三、【学法指导】

### （一）词汇测试考点

词汇题主要测试学生对考纲内词汇和短语的词义、用法和搭配的辨认和运用能力。测试的重点主要有：

#### 1. 词性及词形辨析

英语中有一部分单词的动词形式和名词形式很接近，容易混淆，如 **advise**, **advice**; **practise**, **practice**; **affect**, **effect** 等等。还有一部分单词形式上雷同，但意义及用法相去甚远，某些由相同词根衍生出来的单词，意义也不同，切不可望文生义。如：**adapt**（适应；改编）和 **adopt**（采纳；收养）；**sensitive**（敏感的）和 **sensible**（明智的）；**late**（迟的）和 **lately**（近来）；**available**（可利用的）和 **advisable**（可取的）等等。

#### 2. 近义词或词组辨析，包括搭配关系

出题者往往针对考生只记中文意思，而不花心思掌握词或词组用法这一薄弱环节，将一系列近义词或词组放在一起，若把握不住选项之间的语义内涵及差异，失分的可能性极大。

### 3. 关于不定代词、数词、形容词及副词等的用法

这一类题型属于复习的“盲区”，很容易被忽视，不定代词常考的有 any(任一)、another(泛指另外一个)、the other(特指两方中的另一方)、one(某一)、none(没有人)、nothing(没有东西)、neither(两者中没有一个)、either(两者中任一方)、both(都)、all(三个或三个以上都)、anyone(任何一人)、anything(任何一物)等等；数词主要考核基数词和序数词的用法；形容词主要考核多个形容词的次序问题；副词则偏重在词义辨析及修饰对象上是修饰动词还是修饰形容词。

### 4. 动词短语和介词短语的搭配和辨义

有些词组或表达方式在题干中往往只出现一部分，另一部分则由选项来补全。常见搭配关系的考点居多，但也有搭配关系成立，而句意不合的情况出现。词与词组的常见搭配有“名词+介词”、“动词+介词/副词”、“动词+名词”、“形容词+介词”、“介词短语”。其中与动词搭配的介词或副词可构成词义辨析题。这类动词中常见的有：take, go, get, give, carry, cut, make, put, bring, break, call, pull, turn, hand, set 等。做这类题时一定要看清楚空格前后的动词、介词或名词以选择合适的搭配关系，平时也要注意积累相关短语。

## 四、【习题训练】

### A 组

单项填空 从 A、B、C、D 四个选项中，选出可以填入空白处的最佳选项。

1. Bob, would you please get this film \_\_\_\_? I wonder if this camera works.  
A. washed                      B. developed                      C. printed                      D. shown
2. In this mountain area, wood was \_\_\_\_ a fire, which caused the destruction of forests.  
A. used to make                      B. used to making  
C. use to make                      D. used to making
3. The journalist missed \_\_\_\_ when he was covering the war in Iraq.  
A. killing                      B. to be killed                      C. to kill                      D. being killed
4. My car needs \_\_\_\_ every three days, so we have to save the cost.  
A. to oil                      B. be oiled                      C. oiling                      D. to oiled
5. If most breadwinners \_\_\_\_ a day's pay to the project for the poor, then it will be hopeful.  
A. show                      B. donate                      C. present                      D. give

6. —I'd like to book a room for tonight.  
—Sorry, sir, but we don't have any rooms \_\_\_\_\_ right now.  
A. usable                      B. comfortable                      C. available                      D. suitable
7. I am very \_\_\_\_\_ with my own cooking. It looks nice and has a \_\_\_\_\_ smell.  
A. pleasant; pleased                      B. pleased; pleased  
C. pleasant; pleasant                      D. pleased; pleasant
8. As everyone knows, only by hard working can you \_\_\_\_\_ the goal.  
A. achieve                      B. receive                      C. believe                      D. relieve
9. We will wait for further information. You'd better keep us \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. heard                      B. informed                      C. realized                      D. recognized
10. More than 5,000 people \_\_\_\_\_ the meeting. That's really a grand meeting!  
A. took                      B. attended                      C. took part                      D. joined
11. —I regret \_\_\_\_\_ you John has been fired.  
—How come? I can hardly believe my ears. He is such a fine worker.  
A. telling                      B. having told                      C. to tell                      D. to have told
12. The school edition of 21<sup>st</sup> Century is \_\_\_\_\_ a newspaper. It helps us to improve our English and broaden our horizon.  
A. no less than                      B. no more than                      C. less than                      D. more than
13. Hearing his travelling \_\_\_\_\_, I knew that he was an \_\_\_\_\_ traveller.  
A. experiences; experienced                      B. experience; experience  
C. experiences; experiencing                      D. experience; experiencing
14. \_\_\_\_\_ me, he walked up to me, wearing a brilliant smile.  
A. To see                      B. For seeing                      C. On seeing                      D. Because seeing
15. One of the best ways for people to keep fit is to \_\_\_\_\_ healthy eating habits.  
A. grow                      B. develop                      C. increase                      D. raise

B 组

完成译文 根据中文原文完成下列各英文译文。(每空限填一个词)

1. 赢得全体师生尊敬的最好方法就是努力学习并取得好成绩。

The best way to \_\_\_\_\_ from the school was to work hard and achieve high grades.

2. 我们的广播俱乐部不只是播放音乐, 每天早上我们播放时事新闻和天气预报。

Our radio club is \_\_\_\_\_ just music. Every morning we tell students about weather report and recent news.

3. 我很高兴经历了一种不同的生活方式。

I am pleased to experience a different \_\_\_\_\_ .

4. 周末在家上网听起来像个不错的主意。

To surf the Internet at home at the weekend \_\_\_\_\_ a good idea.

5. 我们很遗憾地通知大家, 科学馆在下周四关闭。

We \_\_\_\_\_ you that Science Laboratory will be closed next Thursday.

6. 发短信给 1659, 你就会免费获得一个精美礼品。

Send the short message to 1659 and you will get a wonderful gift \_\_\_\_\_ .

7. 作为英语老师, 我们应该尽我们所能去培养学生学英语的兴趣。

As English teachers, we should do all we can to \_\_\_\_\_ the students' \_\_\_\_\_ in learning English.

8. 他一进屋就坐下来看书。

\_\_\_\_\_ the room, he sat down and began to read.

C 组

please, prepare, inform, experience, broadcast, introduce, challenge, continue, achieve, regret

用括号中所给单词的适当形式填空

1. Have you \_\_\_\_\_ Yoga?

2. We're \_\_\_\_\_ to listen to her \_\_\_\_\_ voice.
3. You can hear the programme \_\_\_\_\_ every Wednesday. Don't miss it!
4. Let me \_\_\_\_\_ myself first, my name is Jason.
5. According to the weather report, the weather will \_\_\_\_\_ fine till this weekend.
6. The success of the experiment proves that we have made great \_\_\_\_\_ in the study of computer.
7. To our \_\_\_\_\_, the Japanese never feel \_\_\_\_\_ for what they did in the second war.
8. City people want to be outdoors on the weekend and do something \_\_\_\_\_, like mountain climbing, bungee and so on.
9. While I was busy \_\_\_\_\_ for the final examination, I spent some time working out in the gym every day.
10. The manager hoped to be \_\_\_\_\_ of how our business was going on.



## 一、【学习目标】

1. 掌握和青少年成长有关的常用单词、词组与句型。
2. 运用所学词汇谈论青少年经常遇到的问题。

### ★本单元重要词组:

turn up 调高声音; 出现	a waste of 浪费
spare time 空余时间	than expected 比预料的要.....
do ...with... 处置	expect...from... 从.....指望.....
be a mess/ in a mess 乱成一团	leave sb in charge 委托某人负责
act like 行为举止像	go unpunished 不受惩罚
go out 熄灭	not...any more 不再
now that 既然	feel like (doing)sth 想要做某事
in the form of 以.....的形式	stay up 熬夜, 不睡
after all 毕竟	mix up 混淆
as though/if 好像, 似乎	insist on (doing) sth 坚持(做)某事
Internet Café 网吧	at present 目前
like crazy 发疯似的, 拼命的	be hard on sb 对某人苛刻
can't wait to do sth 迫不及待地要做某事	
be supposed to do 被期望或要求做,应该做	
have one's arm crossed 双臂交叉抱在胸前	
forbid sb from doing sth/forbid sb to do sth 禁止某人做某事	

## 二、【要点解读】

**1. surprise v. 使.....惊奇, 使.....震惊 n. 惊奇, 惊异; 吃惊的事**

### [基本构词]

surprised adj. 感到吃惊的

surprising adj. 令人吃惊的

### [短语搭配]

surprise sb 使某人吃惊

to one's surprise 使某人吃惊的是

in surprise 惊奇地, 吃惊地

by surprise 出其不意地

be surprised to do sth 做某事感到吃惊

### [典型例句]

The news greatly surprised us.

这条消息使我们大为惊讶。

Her face showed surprise at the news.

听到这个消息她脸上露出了惊奇的神情。

He gave me a surprise by arriving early.

他的早到使我大吃一惊。

To our surprise, the boy won the prize.

使我们惊奇的是这个男孩获奖了。

"How did you come here?" she said in surprise.

"你怎么到这儿来的?"她惊讶地说。

### [词语辨析]

▲surprising 具有主动意义, 多用来表示事物的特征, 在句中多作定语或表语。

▲surprised 具有被动意义，多用来表示人的心理特征，在句中多作定语，表语或状语。

He gave me some surprising news.

他给我带来一些令人惊讶的消息。

The result is surprising.

结果是令人惊讶的。

I was surprised to see him there.

我真想不到会在那儿见到他。

Surprised at his success, we asked him how he had made it.

对他的成功感到很惊讶，我们问他是怎么做到的。

类似的单词还：worried/worrying, pleased/pleasing, excited/exciting, encouraged/encouraging, interested/interesting, satisfied/satisfying, bored/boring, scared/scaring, frightened/frightening, frustrated/frustrating 等。

**2. charge n. 负责，管理；收费；控告 v. 收(费)，索(价)；控告**

**[短语搭配]**

in /under the charge of sb 由某人负责

have /take charge of 照顾，管理，负责

in charge of 主管

free of charge 免费地

charge sb some money (for sth) 向某人要价多少

charge sb with sth 指控某人某事

**[典型例句]**

What is the charge in the hotel?

这旅馆收费多少？

Doctors have charge of the sick people.

医生负责照顾病人。

Soon he will take charge of the department.

他很快会来负责管理这个部门。

The ticket is free of charge.

这票是免费的。

He charged me 100 dollars for this coat.

这件外套他要我一百美元。

The driver was charged with speeding.

司机被控超速驾车。

### [词语辨析]

#### in charge of 和 in the charge of 的用法比较

▲ in charge of 主管，负责（表主动）

▲ in the charge of 在.....负责之下，由.....负责管理（表被动）

Mr Green is in charge of this factory.

格林先生管理这家工厂。

This factory is in the charge of Mr Green.

这家工厂由格林先生负责管理。

### 3. insist v. 坚持说；坚决主张，坚持要求

#### [短语搭配]

insist on/upon (doing) sth 坚持做某事

if you insist 如果你一定坚持的话（常用于口语中，表示勉强同意）

#### [典型例句]

She insisted that he was wrong.

她坚持认为他错了。

注:表示“坚持说，坚决认为”时，接 that 从句，从句的动作多为已发生之事，用陈述语气。

He insisted that we (should) accept these gifts.

他坚持要我们接受这些礼物。

注：表示“坚决主张；坚持要求”时，接 **that** 从句，从句的动作为将要发生之事，用虚拟语气，  
即：主语+ (should) + 动词原形。

He insisted on/upon my going with him.=He insisted that I (should) go with him.

他坚持要我跟他一起去。

**4. suggest v. 建议（宾语从句用虚拟语气）；暗示，使想起（宾语从句用陈述语气）**

**[基本构词]**

suggestion n. 建议

**[典型例句]**

She suggested an early start.

她建议早一点出发。

They suggested waiting until the proper time.

他们建议等到恰当的时机才行动。

She suggested that the class meeting **(should) not be held** on Saturday.

她建议班会不要在星期六举行。

The smile on his face suggests that he **is pleased with** my answer.

他脸上的微笑表明他对我的回答很满意。

The thought of summer suggests swimming.

一想到夏天就使人们联想到游泳。

It was suggested that we (should) give a performance at the party.

人们建议我们在晚会上表演节目。

### 三、【学法指导】

#### （二）学习策略

##### 1. 音标发音记忆法

根据读音规则记单词，掌握常见的读音规则。如：元音字母在重读开、闭音节的读音，辅音字母多数发字母名称音的前半部分或后半部分，常见的字母组合的读音以及辅音连缀

和成音节，这是最普通最常用的记忆单词方法。而且读音准确也是学好英文的关键，因此建议大家在背单词时一定要看准单词的发音，调动多种感觉器官，加深记忆，同时为“听力”打下良好基础。例如：congratulations 这个单词，虽然很长，但是只要会读，就能会拼写。再如：circumstance 读音为 cir-cum-stance。按此方法记忆单词时，要特别注意元音字母的读音变化。

## 2. 谐趣记忆法

谐趣记忆法是根据读音、词形、词义的关系，利用诙谐、荒诞的曲解来记忆词汇。如：wonderful=王得福(一个姓王的得到了福气，当然好极了)；bargain (n. 便宜货、廉价货 vi. 讨价还价)，在酒吧(bar)里获得(gain)的东西还会是什么呢？当然是 bargain(廉价货)啦！hesitation (n. 犹豫)，在 station(车站)i(我)进去了，可 he(他)还在外面犹豫不决(hesitation)；apartment (n. 房间、公寓)，公寓(apartment)是一(a)部分(part)男人(men)喝茶(t)的地方。agency (n. 机构、代理处)，在代理机构的人不能偷懒，要“爱勤些(与 agency 谐音)”，据说老外百分之九十的人都很懒，所以有如此告诫。

## 四、【习题训练】

### A 组

单项填空 从 A、B、C、D 四个选项中，选出可以填入空白处的最佳选项。

1. Will you please \_\_\_\_\_ me several minutes to go through my speech?

- A. spend                      B. save                      C. spare                      D. share

2. —The skirt looks nice indeed, but you \_\_\_\_\_ too much for it.

—I'm afraid it can't be any lower.

- A. offer                      B. buy                      C. sell                      D. charge

3. —Why did you eat your words, Billy?

—Sorry, dear. But I really forgot where I was \_\_\_\_\_ to meet you.

- A. demanded                      B. believed                      C. supposed                      D. hoped

4. The joyful expression on her face \_\_\_\_\_ that she had won the prize as expected.

- A. described                      B. suggested                      C. expressed                      D. explained

5. \_\_\_\_\_ the heater so that the room can be warmed quickly.

- A. Hold up                      B. Turn up                      C. Set up                      D. Open up

6. With such a large sum of money on hand, I was at a loss \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. how to do with                                      B. what to do with it  
C. what to deal with                                  D. what would do with
7. He was left \_\_\_\_\_ the shop while the manager was away.  
A. in charge of                                        B. under charge of  
C. in the charge of                                  D. under the charge of
8. As for me, I really think the endless homework is rather too hard \_\_\_\_\_ us.  
A. for                                      B. at                                      C. on                                      D. in
9. I explained to them that I have so much work to do, but they insisted \_\_\_\_\_to the party.  
A. my come                              B. my coming                              C. on I come                              D. on my coming
10. Don't be disappointed! \_\_\_\_\_ you'll have one more chance of trying it.  
A. At all                                  B. Above all                                  C. In all                                      D. After all
11. She said she was going to stay there for a week, but in fact she arrived back two days earlier than \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. expecting                              B. to be expected                              C. expected                                      D. was expected
12. Sorry, sir, you are forbidden \_\_\_\_\_ here. If you like, you can go to the smoking area.  
A. smoking                              B. to smoke                                      C. to smoking                                      D. to be smoked
13. —You look so upset, Jane. \_\_\_\_\_?  
—I can't find my new cellphone.  
A. What's for                              B. So what                                      C. What's up                                      D. Beg your pardon
14. Naniel \_\_\_\_\_ studies here. He has gone abroad for further education.  
A. no more                                  B. no longer                                      C. not any more                                      D. not any longer
15. The football fans often \_\_\_\_\_ late to watch live broadcasts of football matches.  
A. stay up                                  B. turn up                                      C. put up                                      D. mix up

### B 组

完成译文 根据中文原文完成下列各英文译文。（每空限填一个词）

1. 让你们用来买狗食的钱已经不见了。

The money \_\_\_\_\_ you were to buy dog food is gone.

2. 这个家可不是一个对不良行为听之任之的地方。

This is not a family where bad behavior \_\_\_\_\_.

3. 怎么啦？你的房间一团糟。

What's up? Your room is \_\_\_\_\_.

4. 你得玩命工作，把这工作做完。

You'll have to work \_\_\_\_\_ to get this finished.

5. 当我想讲话的时候，他们都乐意听。

When I \_\_\_\_\_, they were ready to listen.

6. 我迫不及待地想尝尝这可口的鲜汤。

I \_\_\_\_\_ taste the delicious soup.

7. 不要对这种自私的人有太多的指望。

Don't \_\_\_\_\_ too much \_\_\_\_\_ such a selfish man.

8. 天看上去好像要下雨了，别忘了带伞。

It \_\_\_\_\_ it is going to rain. Don't forget to take your umbrella.

### C 组

根据上下文和首字母完成句子。

1. You have to give me some e\_\_\_\_\_ for your coming late before you enter the classroom.
2. It's r\_\_\_\_\_ of you to break in without knocking on the door when we are talking.
3. Bob was so angry that he ran into his room, s\_\_\_\_\_ the door behind him.
4. There may often be misunderstanding and problems between a\_\_\_\_\_ and children.
5. She is a s\_\_\_\_\_ girl. She thinks too much of herself.



## 一、【学习目标】

1. 学习与健康有关的常用单词、词组与句型。
2. 运用所学词汇谈论有关健康生活的话题。

### ★本单元重要词组:

be dying to do/ for sth 渴望做某事	work out 锻炼,训练
lose weight 减肥	be ashamed of 对.....感到羞耻
recover from 从.....中恢复过来	an exact match for 和.....完全匹配的
follow one's advice 听从某人的建议	be embarrassed about 对某事感到难堪
go on diets/a diet 实行节食	come across 偶然遇到
in secret 秘密地	side effect 副作用
fall out (头发等)脱落	team sport 团队运动
build up 增强	risk doing sth 冒着做某事的风险
put on weight 体重增加	call sb names 骂人
cheer up 高兴起来	live(lead) a... life 过着.....样的生活
along with 和.....一起	in the long term(run) 从长远角度看
skip meals 不吃饭	give up on sb 对某人失望
a good amount of 许多,大量的	as a matter of fact 事实上
in no time 很快	give out 分发,发出
allow enough time for sb to do sth 留出充足的时间让某人做某事	

## 二、【要点解读】

## 1. contain v. 包含，包括；能容纳

### [基本构词]

container n. 容器

### [词语辨析]

#### include 和 contain 的用法比较

▲ **include**: 指在整体中能明确界定的几个部分，指某整体包含或容纳某部分。.

The health club includes a gym, a swimming pool, and a locker room.

健身俱乐部包括体操房，游泳池和更衣室。

Our ten-day tour includes a visit to New York.

我们十天的旅行包括参观纽约。

▲ **contain**: 指容器、空间里所有东西,侧重所含的量与成分。

The bowl contains a variety of fruits.

碗里装有各种水果。

This bottle contains two glasses of beer.

这个瓶子装了两杯啤酒。

**注:** include 常以 including (名词 / 代词前) 或 included (名词 / 代词后) 的形式出现在短语中, 用来举例, 解释或补充说明。如:

Many women were waiting to buy that kind of cloth, including my mother.

Many women were waiting to buy that kind of cloth, my mother included.

## 2. follow v. 跟随；仿效；跟得上；遵守；继而来之

### [基本构词]

following a. 接着的；以下的

### [短语搭配]

follow one's advice 听从某人的建议

follow one's example 效仿某人

follow the rules 遵守规则

as follows 如下（通常作表语）

the following 下列的

### [典型例句]

I knew the way, so I went first, and the others followed.

我熟悉路，所以由我带路，其他人跟着我走

His words (The rules) are as follows.

他的话(规则)如下。

I didn't quite follow; could you explain it again?

我不太明白，请再解释一遍好吗？

The following is a statement made by the government.

以下是政府所作做的一项声明。

There followed a moment of silence.

紧接着一阵沉默。

### 3. consider v. 考虑，细想；体谅；照顾

#### [基本构词]

considerate a. 体贴的

considerable a. 相当多的，相当大的

consideration n. 考虑；关心

considering prep. & conj. 考虑到，就.....而言

#### [短语搭配]

consider...(as/ to be)+名词/形容词 认为.....是.....

take sth into consideration 考虑到某事，体谅

under consideration 在考虑中（表被动）

### [典型例句]

The headmaster is **considering putting up** another lab building in the school.

校长正考虑在学校里再建一幢实验楼。

They **considered how to help** him out of the difficulty.

他们考虑如何帮助他克服困难。

Do you **consider that** we can finish the project ahead of time?

你认为我们能提前完成这个项目吗?

Tom is considered (as/to be) our best friend.

汤姆被认为是我们的最好朋友。

She is very active, considering her age.

就她的年龄而言,她是够活跃的。

#### **4. advice n. 忠告, 劝告, 建议**

##### **[基本构词]**

advise v. 忠告, 劝告

用法:

advise doing sth 建议做某事

advise sb to do sth 建议某人做某事

advise that sb (should) do sth 建议某人做某事 (宾语从句用虚拟语气)

##### **[短语搭配]**

give advice on 对.....提出建议

take/follow/accept one's advice 接受某人的建议

ask for advice 征求意见

##### **[典型例句]**

He advised waiting till the proper time.

他建议等到适当时机才行动。

My teacher advises me to leave now.

老师建议我现在就离开。

We advise measures (should) be taken to stop pollution at once.

我们建议立即采取措施以阻止污染。

## [词语辨析]

### advise 和 persuade 的用法比较

▲advise 表示“劝说”。

▲persuade 表示“说服”，其常用结构为 persuade sb to do sth 或 persuade sb into doing sth, 表示“说服某人做某事”，如果单纯表示“劝说”的动作，常用 advise 或 try to persuade, 如：

He persuaded me to do that in the end. =He persuaded me into doing that in the end.

他最后说服了我去做那件事。

I advised/tried to persuade her to start early, but she wouldn't listen.

我劝她早点动身，可她就是不听。

## 三、【学法指导】

### (二) 学习策略

#### 3. 比较记忆法

是把同义词或形似词放在一起，加以区别、说明来掌握单词的方法。记忆的过程是一组组，一对对单词的同时记忆。这种记忆方法可以记住单词拼写的时候，还掌握了词与词的区别和各自特殊的用法，于是将平时极易混淆的单词清楚地区别开。例如：

##### 1) 词义比较记忆法

同义词 contain 和 include 都有表示“包含”之意，但是 contain 侧重于容纳，include 侧重于包括。specially 和 especially 都有“特别”之意，specially 意思是“专门”，表示目的；especially 意思是“尤其”，表示强调，如：I came to Beijing **specially** to see you. This problem is **especially** difficult.

##### 2) 词形比较记忆法

英语单词中有大量的单词形式上雷同，但意义及用法相差甚远，如 broad (宽广的), board (木板), abroad (在国外), aboard (在船上，在飞机上等)；mental (智力的)，medal (奖章)，model (模范)，metal (金属的)，acquire (取得，获得)，inquire (打听，查询)，require (需要，要求，命令)，adapt (适应；改编)，adopt (采纳；收养)，sensitive

(敏感的), sensible (明智的), late (迟的), lately (近来), available (可利用的), advisable (可取的) 等等。另外还要注意下面几种类型的单词:

### ★同音同形异义词

△ bear n. 熊——bear v. 忍受      △ lie v. 位于——lie v. 说谎  
△ meet v. 遇到——meet adj. 合适的    △ base n. 基础——base adj. 卑鄙的  
△ mean v. 意味着; 打算——mean adj. 吝啬的

### ★同音异义词

△ mail v. 邮寄——male adj. 雄性的    △ holy adj. 神圣的——wholly adv. 完全地  
△ dear adj. 亲爱的——deer n. 鹿      △ pair n. 一双——pear n. 梨  
△ stare v. 凝视——stair n. 楼梯    △ principal n. 校长——principle n. 原则  
另外还有 hear/here; there/their; son/sun; flower/flour 等等。

### ★同形异义词

△ lead v. 带领——lead n. 铅      △ refuse v. 拒绝——refuse n. 垃圾  
△ sow v. 播种——sow n. 母猪      △ tear n. 眼泪——tear v. 撕裂  
△ prayer n. 祈祷——prayer n. 祈祷着    △ wind v. 缠绕; 上发条——wind n. 风

## 四、【习题训练】

### A 组

单项填空 从 A、B、C、D 四个选项中, 选出可以填入空白处的最佳选项。

1. If you \_\_\_\_ breakfast often, you will have no energy for the morning work.  
A. leave out      B. drop      C. give up      D. skip
2. ——How come a simple meal like this costs so much?  
——We have \_\_\_\_ in your bill the cost of the teapot you broke just now.  
A. added      B. included      C. gained      D. contained
3. ——That's me when I graduated from college. See what I look like now!

- Why not take up exercise to improve your \_\_\_\_?
- A. expression                      B. form                      C. shadow                      D. figure
4. He is always full of \_\_\_\_ as though he never felt tired.
- A. strength                      B. energy                      C. force                      D. spirit
5. ——Do you get together with your old friends?
- Yes, from time to time, but not \_\_\_\_.
- A. normally                      B. certainly                      C. regularly                      D. necessarily
6. No matter how much money you have, it can't \_\_\_\_ a healthy body.
- A. match                      B. fit                      C. defeat                      D. compare
7. ——Are you feeling any better?
- I'm feeling much better now. Maybe the medicine has \_\_\_\_.
- A. taken                      B. affected                      C. worked                      D. controlled
8. If you go on like this, you have to risk \_\_\_\_ the chance.
- A. being lost                      B. losing                      C. to lose                      D. lose
9. The committee will consider \_\_\_\_ your suggestions into account.
- A. to take                      B. taking                      C. to be taken                      D. being taken
10. Jack advised that we \_\_\_\_ there in his car but the smile on his face suggested that it \_\_\_\_ a trick.
- A. go; was                      B. should go; should be
- C. go; be                      D. went; should be
11. The weather will \_\_\_\_ sunny for a constant few days, so we are determined to go for an outing in the mountains.
- A. stay                      B. look                      C. turn                      D. get
12. We didn't plan our art exhibition like that but it \_\_\_\_ very well.
- A. worked out                      B. tried out                      C. went on                      D. carried out
13. Mary, along with her parents \_\_\_\_ going to visit the West Lake this Sunday.

A. are                      B. is                      C. will be                      D. will

14. If you talk to these senior students, you will find that they have much greater knowledge than commonly \_\_\_\_.

A. supposing                      B. supposed                      C. to suppose                      D. suppose

15. The boy drank \_\_\_\_ milk before getting on the bus, which made him feel sick.

A. a great many                      B. a large amount of  
C. much too                      D. a large number of

### B 组

完成译文 根据中文原文完成下列各英文译文。（每空限填一个词）

1. 对于那些太爱看电视的青少年来说，大量的时间被浪费掉了。

For those teenagers who like to watch too much TV, \_\_\_\_ of time is wasted.

2. 在一个美好的海滩假日之后，你会感到轻松、充满精力。

After a good holiday on the seaside, you will feel relaxed and \_\_\_\_.

3. 为了健康他经常在体育馆进行锻炼。

He \_\_\_\_ regularly in the gym to keep fit.

4. 回答不了老师的提问没有什么难为情的。

Being unable to answer a teacher's questions is nothing to \_\_\_\_.

5. 整个天空顿时就亮堂起来。

\_\_\_\_ at all, the whole sky was lit up.

6. 孩子们喜欢看《哈里·波特》，许多成年人也是如此。

Children like reading Harry Potter, and \_\_\_\_ many adults.

7. 我觉得你现在的样子就很棒。

I think you look great \_\_\_\_.

### C 组



完成句子 从框内选择合适的单词并用其正确形式完成下列各句。

fail, harm, proper, recognize, regular, attract, achieve, relax, concentrate, embarrass

1. He always behaves \_\_\_\_\_ in front of the teachers and is liked by all of us.
2. He is a \_\_\_\_\_ as an artist, but a success as an art teacher.
3. I suggest you quit smoking, you know, it is \_\_\_\_\_ to your health.
4. The shy girl is always feeling \_\_\_\_\_ in front of adults.
5. The doctor told me to take the medicine \_\_\_\_\_ three times a day, otherwise it wouldn't work.
6. Flying across the Atlantic for the first time was a great \_\_\_\_\_ .
7. The fans didn't \_\_\_\_\_ the film star until he took off his dark glasses.
8. Having failed my French exams, I decided to \_\_\_\_\_ on science subjects.
9. We were \_\_\_\_\_ by the display of lights.
10. Listening to the country music, I felt quite \_\_\_\_\_ and comfortable.

## 一、【学习目标】

1. 学习与宇宙空间有关的单词、词组与句型。
2. 运用所学词汇谈论有关宇宙空间的简单话题；学习阅读英语新闻综述。

### ★本单元重要词组：

run into 碰到	believe in 相信（信仰、理论、说法等）
step up 加紧	go missing 失踪
due to 因为	show up 露面
put on 播放	according to 根据
rule out 排除	stay out late 在外呆很晚
look into 调查	make up 编造
take charge of 负责	make progress 取得进步
so far 到目前为止	carry out 完成, 实现, 贯彻, 执行
outer space 外层空间	run after 追赶
on average 平均	pull back 拉开
cause sb/sth to do 促使, 引起	do research on 在.....方面进行研究
make a speech 作报告	human beings 人类
dream of 梦想	come true 实现
have the chance to do 有机会做某事	become convinced 确信
see...with one's own eyes 亲眼看见	
show great interest in 对.....表现出极大的兴趣	

## 二、【要点解读】

**1. puzzle v. (使)迷惑不解, (使)为难; n. [C]难题, (字、画)谜**

### [基本构词]

puzzled a. 迷惑的, 困惑的

puzzling a. 令人迷惑的, 令人困惑的

### [短语搭配]

puzzle over/about 苦思

be a puzzle to sb 对某人来说是个谜

be in a puzzle about sth 对某事迷惑不解

### [典型例句]

I've been sitting here puzzling over what to do.

我一直坐在这里苦思着要做什么事。

The computers are a puzzle to me.

我不懂电脑。

**2. search n.& v. 搜寻, 搜查**

### [短语搭配]

search after/for 寻找, 探求

search a person 搜身

search some place 搜查某地

search one's memory 寻思; 追忆

search out 搜(查)出, 探出

search through 把.....仔细搜寻一遍

search into 调查, 研究

in search of 寻找

make a search for 搜查,搜寻

[典型例句]

Police searched everyone present at the scene of crime.

警察搜查了在犯罪现场的每一个人。

He searched every room in the house.

他搜查了这房子的每一个房间。

I've searched my memory, but I can't remember that man's name.

我想了又想,可是记不起那个人的名字。

He searched for work at the various stores.

他在各家商店寻找工作。

The general manager promised to search into the matter.

总经理答应深入调查此事。

**3. possibility n. [U] & [C] 可能,可能性**

[基本构词]

possible a. 可能的

possibly ad. 可能地,也许

[典型例句]

**Is there any possibility that** he will be elected chairman?

他有可能会当选主席吗?

His retirement is **a possibility**.

他退休时可能的事情。

**It's possible for him to solve** the problem.

他可能能解决这个问题。

**It's possible that** his illness will get worse.

可能他的病会恶化。

Read **as many books as possible**.

尽可能多看书。

Send it by air mail **if possible**.

如果可能的话用航空邮寄。

#### **4. disappointed a. 感到失望的**

##### **[基本构词]**

disappoint vt. 使.....失望

disappointing adj. 令人失望的

disappointment [U] 失望，扫兴； [C] 令人失望的事

##### **[短语搭配]**

be / feel disappointed at / about sth 对某事感到失望

be / feel disappointed with sb 对某人感到失望

be disappointed to do sth 做某事很失望

in disappointment 失望地

to one's disappointment 令某人失望的是

##### **[典型例句]**

The result of the football game disappointed all the football fans.

足球比赛的结果使所有球迷非常失望。

We were all disappointed at the news that our picnic was cancelled because of the rain.

因为下雨我们的野餐被取消了，我们对此消息都感到失望。

The fans were disappointed to see their favorite contestant go out in the contest.

歌迷们看到他们最喜爱的选手在比赛中被淘汰感到很失望。

She said she couldn't attend my birthday party, which was very disappointing.

她说她不能参加我的生日聚会了，这很令人失望。

Not getting the job was really a disappointment.

没有获得那份工作真叫人失望。

To his disappointment, the prices of houses have gone down ever since the beginning of this year.

使他失望的是，从今年年初开始，房价一直在跌。

### 三、【学法指导】

#### （二）学习策略

##### 4. 卡片记忆

自己制作单词卡片随时随身记忆单词，卡片写上单词的词形、词性、词义、音标、搭配、例句等。对待词汇的记忆，要充分利用零碎的时间，比如课前课后5分钟或去食堂操场的路上，都可以随手把你制作的卡片拿出来进行记忆，各个击破。每周找个固定的时间把这些卡片重新打乱顺序再温习一遍，记忆效果会更加明显。

##### 5. 语境记忆法

记忆单词最好的方法是按照课文背单词，词不离句，句不离文。所有词汇都密切相联，背起来自然会事半功倍。每学完一篇课文，将文章中体现一定结构和用法的句子以及文中新出现的词组及搭配划出，在理解全文的基础上进行背诵，在背的基础上能默写，这种读背方法是培养语感的途径之一。这样把单词放在语言情景中记忆，学单词快得多。

平时背单词的时候还应该结合做题，在阅读及写作时有意识地运用，对自己背过的单词检验一下，让它变成自己的东西。同时建议花一定的时间系统地看一些教辅书，要集中看完型填空、词汇辨析一类的部分，从细节上对背过的单词作一些深入的辨析，特别是要把自己想当然一看就选了的，但选错了的题目用红笔标注出来。自己将这些常出错的题目集中记在一个本上作为以后冲刺时的重点回忆题。打好了单词的基础对阅读、写作和任何其他部分都很有好处。

##### 6. 同类记忆法

将同类词汇收集在一起，同时背记。注意同类词汇与同义词不同：同义词是指意思相同，而同类词是指基本属性相同，但具体意义的层次，级别或范围不同的一类词汇。如 headmaster 和 principal 是同义词，都表示“中小学校长”；而 president、chancellor 和 director 是同义词，都表示大专院校“校长”。这两组词是同类词汇，都表示“校长”，但具体级别不同。再如 bachelor（学士）、master（硕士）和 doctor（博士）三个词都表示学位，但具体级别不同，所以这三个词也是一组同类词汇。

这样，将同类词汇放在一起记忆，当遇到其中一个词时，头脑中出现的就是一组词，效率会大大提高。

#### 四、【习题训练】

##### A 组

单项填空 从 A、B、C、D 四个选项中，选出可以填入空白处的最佳选项。

1. The building around the corner caught fire last night. The police are now \_\_\_\_\_ the matter.  
A. look out                      B. look into                      C. look through                      D. look about
2. The fish will go \_\_\_\_\_ easily in such hot weather if you don't put it in the fridge.  
A. wrong                      B. bad                      C. away                      D. out
- 3.—The police have been \_\_\_\_\_ the area for quite a long time.  
—I've also noticed that. What have they been \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. searching; searching                      B. searching for; searching  
C. searching for; searching for                      D. searching; searching for
4. It's always difficult being in a foreign country, \_\_\_\_\_ if you don't speak the language.  
A. specifically                      B. particularly                      C. basically                      D. especially
5. My car is badly damaged. I doubt if there is any \_\_\_\_\_ that it will be repaired completely.  
A. question                      B. advantage                      C. opinion                      D. possibility
6. However, at times this balance of nature is \_\_\_\_\_, resulting in a number of possible unforeseen effects.  
A. troubled                      B. puzzled                      C. disturbed                      D. mixed
7. Although David is the eldest in the family, he always lets his sister \_\_\_\_\_ charge of the house.  
A. take                      B. hold                      C. make                      D. get
8. It seems that the white ducks are no longer lovely in the eyes of the local people \_\_\_\_\_ their fear of bird flu.  
A. with                      B. due to                      C. thanks for                      D. because
9. You must end this foolish business of yours \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. as soon as possible                      B. as possible as you can  
C. as quick as possible                      D. as soon as possibly

10. \_\_\_\_ the witnesses, the creature was heavily built and hairy.  
A. Due to                      B. According to    C. Close to                      D. Similar to
11. It is likely that we'll \_\_\_\_ wild animals when you walk in that forest, so be careful.  
A. run into                      B. run after                      C. look into                      D. step up
12. Westerners are learning more and more about Chinese medicine and many of them have come to \_\_\_\_ it.  
A. believe                      B. believe in                      C. pull back                      D. rule out
13. He must have \_\_\_\_ the funny story. I can't believe that it's true.  
A. picked up                      B. turned up                      C. done up                      D. made up
14. What he has done is really \_\_\_\_\_. Now his parents are \_\_\_\_\_ him.  
A. disappointing; disappointed at                      B. disappointing; disappointed about  
C. disappointing; disappointed with                      D. disappointed; disappointed by
15. The \_\_\_\_\_ look on her face suggested that she \_\_\_\_\_ it.  
A. puzzling; hadn't expected                      B. puzzled; hadn't expected  
C. puzzling; wouldn't expect                      D. puzzled; shouldn't expect

### B 组

完成译文 根据中文原文完成下列各英文译文。(每空限填一个词)

1. 工程师们追赶那动物，动物奔跑的速度惊人。

The engineers \_\_\_\_ the creature, which ran with an amazing speed.

2. 医生已经排除他患癌症的可能性。

The doctor has \_\_\_\_ the possibility that he has cancer.

3. 有时候人们喜欢编造这类耸人听闻的故事。

Sometimes people like \_\_\_\_ such shocking stories.

4. 这位著名的教授平均每星期会收到一两封邀请函。

The famous professor received one or two letters of invitation every week \_\_\_\_.



5. 她父母亲总告诫她不要在外呆得太晚。

Her parents often tell her not to \_\_\_\_\_ late.

6. 他们发现，阳光常常会导致雪地上的脚印变大。

They have found that the sun often \_\_\_\_\_ footprints in the snow \_\_\_\_\_ larger.

### C 组

用下列单词或词组的适当形式填空：

late, leave...empty, existence, carry out, disappoint, convince, sink,  
frighten, exploration, puzzle

1. It is highly impossible \_\_\_\_\_ the plan discussed at the meeting.

2. There was a \_\_\_\_\_ look on his face when he was asked questions.

3. The roar of wild animals at night sounded very \_\_\_\_\_ to the kids.

4. I'm fully \_\_\_\_\_ of his innocence.

5. Have you heard from your parents \_\_\_\_\_?

6. She looked past me as if I did not \_\_\_\_\_.

7. They found nothing of great value in the \_\_\_\_\_ ship.

8. Man has launched many spaceships \_\_\_\_\_ outer space.

9. A lot of space is \_\_\_\_\_ in his water -and- ink painting to create a sense of vastness.

10. He was \_\_\_\_\_ to hear that their team lost again.

## 一、【学习目标】

1. 学习与旅游冒险有关的单词、词组与句型。
2. 运用所学词汇谈论与旅游冒险相关话题，阅读旅游宣传册。

### ★本单元重要词组：

be busy doing sth 忙于做某事	by camel/on camels 骑骆驼
go rafting 去漂流	in the dark 在黑暗中
in case 万一	turn upside down 颠倒过来
go on a trip 去旅游	even though 即使
take photos 拍照	scare away 吓跑
up close 靠近地	move on 继续往前
feel sick 感到恶心	run out 用完
make sure 确保	look forward to 期望
all over the world 全世界	wake up 醒来
at dawn 在黎明	than usual 比往常.....
in silence 沉默地	be covered with 被.....覆盖
feed on 以.....为食物	tower over 远高于（周围的人或物）
be home to 是.....家园	in harmony with 与.....和谐
provide...with... 给.....提供.....	heaven on earth 人间天堂

## 二、【要点解读】

### 1. clothing n. (总称) 衣服

## [词语辨析]

### clothing 和 clothes 的用法比较

▲clothing 是不可数名词，是衣服的总称。

They wear very little clothing. 他们衣服穿得很少。

▲clothes n. “衣服”，指各种衣物。是一个没有单数形式的复数名词，其前不可加不定冠词，也不可加数词，但可用 some, these, those, many, few 等词修饰。

正：those clothes/few clothes/many clothes

误：a clothes/two clothes/three clothes

比较而言 clothes 的含义比较具体，而 clothing 的含义则比较抽象。比较：

He is washing his clothes. 他在洗衣服。

Our clothing protects us against the cold. 我们的衣服可以御寒。

注意：要表示衣服的数量，可用以下的表达：

误：a suit of clothing 正：a suit of clothes 一套衣服

误：an article of clothes 正：an article of clothing 一件衣服

## 2. supply v.& n. 供给，供应

## [词语辨析]

### supply, provide 和 offer 的用法比较

▲supply: 供给；补充，弥补

supply+gas/water etc. 用在公用事业上面的居多，着重表示替换或补足所需之物，满足要求的意思；还可作名词，意为“供给（量），物资，存货”。

常用词组：supply sth to sb/supply sb with sth

we have a good supply of water here. 我们这儿水的供应充足。

The school supplies books to the children. 学校为孩子们提供书本。

▲provide: 供给，提供；装备

provide+services, etc., 强调有预见，并通过储存或准备的方式为某事做准备，以在需要提供所需物品。

常用词组：provide sb with sth/provide sth for sb

She provided her father with all the food and money he wanted.

她给她父亲提供他所需要的食物和钱。

▲offer: 提出, 提供; 呈现; 出价

offer+drink/paper, etc., 向别人提供帮助, 服务或物品, 这可能是对方要求也可能是自己主动提出的。

常用词组: offer to help sb      offer sb sth/offer sth to sb

He offered to lend me some books. 他表示要借给我几本书。

We offered him the calculator for US\$50. 这计算器我们向他开价五十美元。

### 3. view n. 看法, 见解; 风景, 景色; 视野

#### [短语搭配]

in view 在视野范围内

come into view 进入视野

in one's view 在某人看来

in view of sth 鉴于某事物; 考虑到某事物

#### [典型例句]

The view from the top of the hill was good.

从山顶上看风景很美。

He has strong views on education.

他对教育的观点很强硬。

In my view, he should never have been offered the job in the first place.

在我看来, 原先压根儿就不该给他这份工作。

In view of his age, I have decided not to blame him.

考虑到他的年龄, 我决定不怪他。

### 4. case n. 情况

#### [短语搭配]

in case 万一

in case of 以防……，万一发生……

in any case 在任何情况下；无论如何

in no case 决不

in this / that case 如果这样/那样的话

### [典型例句]

In case anything important happens, please call me up.

万一有什么重要的事，请打电话给我。

You had better carry some money in case.

你最好带些钱以防万一。

In case of fire, call 119.

万一起火了拨打 119。

In any case, do your best.

不管怎么样你都要尽力。

In no case should you give up.

你决不能放弃。

It's difficult to know what to do in this case.

在这种情况下很难知道怎么做。

## 三、【学法指导】

### (二) 学习策略

#### 7. 构词法记忆法

通过掌握构词法来记忆单词，这种记忆法可以将具有同一基本意义的不同词性或具有相反意义的一系列单词同时记忆，使不同单词的词义、词性不易混淆。英语主要有三种构词法：1) 转化，即由一个词类转化为另一个词类。如：

picture(n.)画——picture(v.)描绘; water(n.)水——water(v.) 浇水

2) 合成，即由两个或更多的词合成一个词。如：

wood(木)+cut(刻)——woodcut(木刻)

pea(豌豆)+nuts(坚果)——peanut(花生)

3) 派生, 即通过加前缀或后缀构成另一个词, 如:

★表示否定意义的前缀主要有: **in-, il-, im-, ir-, un-, dis-, non-**, 如:

incorrect, independence, illegal, impossible, irregular, unhappy, unable, discourage, disobey, non-stop, non-violent

★表示错误意义的前缀主要有: **mis-**, 如:

mistake, mislead, misunderstand

★表示反意思的前缀主要有: **un-, anti-**, 如:

undo, unfold, unload, uncover, the Anti-Japanese War, anti-body

★表示在前、在前面的前缀主要有: **pre-**, 如:

preview(预习), preface(序言), prewar(战前)

★表示向后、在后边的前缀主要有: **post-**, 如:

postgraduate(研究生), postwar(战后)

★表示在下面、下的前缀主要有: **sub-**, 如:

subway(地铁站), suburb(郊区), submarine(潜艇)

★表示超越的前缀有 **super-**, 如:

superman, supermarket, superstar

★表示转移的前缀主要有: **trans-**, 如:

translate, transport, transplant

★表示某种职业或动作执行人的名词后缀主要有: **-an, -ant, -ee, -eer, -er, -ese, -or, -ist**, 如:

African, musician, servant, merchant, employee, examinee, engineer, volunteer, teacher, villager, Chinese, Japanese, operator, physicist, pianist, artist, chemist

★表示抽象名词的名词后缀主要有: **-age, -al, -ance, -ence, -dom, -hood, -ment, -ness, -sion, -ship, -tion**, 如:

courage, marriage, importance, violence, freedom, kingdom, wisdom, childhood, government, treatment, kindness, conclusion, expression, friendship, citizenship, action, attention

★带有学术、科技含义的名词后缀主要有: **-ics, -ology**, 如:

mathematics, electronics, biology, technology

★形容词后缀主要有: **-able, -ible, -al, -ish, -ive, -ly, -ful, -ous, -en, -less**, 如:

comfortable, horrible, natural, foolish, selfish, active, impressive, manly, fatherly, wonderful, helpful, dangerous, various, generous, wooden, golden, woolen, wireless, countless

★动词后缀主要有: **-ize/-ise, -en, -fy**, 如:

organize, modernize, globalize, weaken, widen, purify, simplify

#### 四、【习题训练】

##### A 组

##### I. 用适当的介词填空

1. He lives close \_\_\_\_\_ me, so we go to school together every day.
2. The government calls on the whole country to provide children in the flood-stricken area \_\_\_\_\_ food and clothes.
3. Before going on the trip, she covered the furniture \_\_\_\_\_ cloth to keep them from getting dusty.
4. I've heard that we can see beautiful stars \_\_\_\_\_ clear nights.
5. Can you imagine travelling alone \_\_\_\_\_ camel in Sahara Desert? You won't get lost easily \_\_\_\_\_ camels.
6. The three generations live \_\_\_\_\_ harmony \_\_\_\_\_ each other and they never quarrel about anything.
7. He is nearly 1.9 meters tall. He towers \_\_\_\_\_ all his classmates.
8. He jumped with joy \_\_\_\_\_ the news of his being admitted to the distinguished university.
9. My uncle phoned to say that he would be \_\_\_\_\_ a business trip to Hong Kong next month.
10. The tourists stood \_\_\_\_\_ silence and watched the flag being raised.

##### II. 单项填空 从 A、B、C、D 四个选项中, 选出可以填入空白处的最佳选项。

1. Dad, would you please take down that picture book on the shelf for me? It is out of my \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. touch                      B. reach                      C. hold                      D. arrival
2. I don't think I'll need any money but I'll bring some just \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. at last                      B. in case                      C. once again                      D. in time
3. He sat\_\_\_\_\_ against the wall and listened to the teacher\_\_\_\_\_.  
A. close; close                      B. closely; closely  
C. closely; close                      D. close; closely
4. Hearing the roar of the wild animals in the forest, he felt \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. scary                      B. scared                      C. scare                      D. scaring
5. Mr. Smith is a workaholic and he is always busy \_\_\_\_\_ his office work.  
A. doing                      B. to do                      C. being done                      D. to be done
6. You must go all out to finish the task in time, \_\_\_\_\_ it is very difficult.  
A. unless                      B. even though                      C. instead                      D. in case
7. After the long \_\_\_\_\_ walk, I felt very \_\_\_\_\_, so I went to bed very early without doing the housework.  
A. tiring, tired                      B. tired, tiring  
C. tiring, tiring                      D. tired, tired
8. I'll tell you \_\_\_\_\_ I see in my new school immediately I settle down there.  
A. whatever                      B. whenever                      C. However                      D. wherever
9. A car knocked into a signpost and \_\_\_\_\_ upside down. Luckily, the driver crawled(爬) out without being hurt.  
A. put                      B. turned                      C. sent                      D. made
10. According to the rule of that company, all the workers are offered a \_\_\_\_\_ medical examination for free once a year.  
A. normal                      B. usual                      C. regular                      D. common

### B 组

完成译文 根据中文原文完成下列各英文译文。(每空限填一个词)



1. 无论我们决定什么他都不同意。

He disagree with \_\_\_\_\_.

2. 我多想能骑着骆驼旅行啊！

How I wish I \_\_\_\_\_ on camels.

3. 众所周知, 马以草为食。

It is known to all that horses \_\_\_\_\_ grass.

4. 森林是各种各样动物的家园。

Forest is \_\_\_\_\_ all kinds of animals.

5. 他们盼望已久的这一天终于到来了！

The day they have been \_\_\_\_\_ has come at last!

### C 组

完成句子 在下列句子的空白处填写能使句子在语法和意思上都正确的单词。

1. In this heavenly world, people live in perfect h\_\_\_\_\_ with nature and the outside world is forgotten.
2. It seems as if it is a long time since somebody lived in the house, for the furniture is d\_\_\_\_\_.
3. At the meeting nobody would be the first to give his opinion and it was Jack who broke the s\_\_\_\_\_.
4. The Chinese g\_\_\_\_\_ aims to put harmony into society so that Chinese people will live more peacefully and happily.
5. The film star is s\_\_\_\_\_ by his fans, signing his names on the fans' hands, T-shirts and so on.

## 一、【学习目标】

1. 学习与人物描写有关的单词、词组与句型。
2. 运用所学词汇谈论、介绍人物、写自传、采访等。

### ★本单元重要词组:

of all time 自古以来，有史以来	during one's life 在某人的一生中
be curious about sth 对.....好奇	set sail for 启航去
be known as 以.....知名	be present at the meeting 出席会议
die of heart trouble 死于心脏病	have sth to do with 与.....有关系/牵连
result in 引起（某种结果）	fall ill with a fever 由于发烧而生病
in advance 提前	pay off （某事得到）回报
work as a nurse 当护士	go well 进展顺利
a great deal of money 大量的钱	set foot on/in 踏上，踏入
at full speed 全速	in his thirties 在他三十多岁时
make a note of 作.....笔记	be related to 与.....有关系
make a dream a reality 使梦想成真	go down in history 载入史册
look up to sb 尊敬某人	live one's dream 实现梦想
win over 战胜；争取过来	compare...to... 把.....比作.....
have a(n) ... effect on 对.....有影响	in the 90s 在 90 年代
by coincidence= by chance 碰巧	
as well as 和.....一样好；也，还有（用来连接并列成分）	
be qualified for /to do 做.....是合格的，有.....的资格	
three out of the fourteen 十四个中的三个	

## 二、【要点解读】

### 1. curious a. 好奇的；奇异的

#### [基本构词]

curiously ad. 好奇的

curiosity n. 好奇；好奇心

#### [短语搭配]

be curious about 对.....感到好奇

be curious to do sth 好奇想做某事

arouse / excite one's curiosity 引起某人的好奇心

#### [典型例句]

Children are naturally curious about everything around them.

小孩子会自然地对周围每一件事感到好奇。

I'm curious to know what they are talking about.

我很想知道他们在谈论什么。

That he left without saying goodbye aroused my curiosity.

他不辞而别引起我的好奇心。

### 2. present a. ['preznt] 出席的，到场的；现在，目前（做前置定语）

n. ['priznt] 礼物，赠品；目前，现在

v. ['priznt] 呈奉，奉送

#### [短语搭配]

at present=at the present time 目前

for the present 目前，暂且

be present at 出席，到场

to the present 到目前

**[典型例句]**

How many people were present at the meeting?

有多少人出席了会议？

In the present case, we can do nothing but wait.

在目前的情况下我们只能等候。

He is in Shanghai at present.

他现在在上海。

I can't remember it for the present.

我暂时记不起来了。

I presented the letter of introduction to the manager.

我把介绍信交给了经理。

**3. result n. 结果, 效果 v. 结果, 导致**

**[短语搭配]**

result in 造成某种结果, 导致

result from 由于.....而产生, 作为.....的结果

as a result 因此

as a result of 因为.....

without result (= in vain) 徒劳, 毫无结果

**[典型例句]**

The accident resulted in the death of two passengers.

车祸导致两名乘客死亡。

The illness will result in total blindness if (it is) left untreated.

如果不治疗的话, 这病将导致完全失明。

Illness often results from eating too much.=Eating too much often results in illness.

疾病往往是因吃的太多而致。

We had to stay at home as a result of the heavy rain.

由于下很大的雨，我们只得呆在家里。

He tried to recall her name without result.

他试图想起她的名字，但没能想起。

**4. certain a. (未指明真实名称的) 某.....; 确定的, 无疑的; 一定会.....**

**[基本构词]**

certainly ad. 当然; 一定, 无疑

certainty n. 确实; 必然

**[短语搭配]**

be certain to do sth 必定会

for certain 确信

It's certain that- 一定, 肯定

make certain of / that / wh- 弄清楚; 确保

**[典型例句]**

A certain Mr. Jones called while you were out.

你不在的时候有一个琼斯先生打电话来了。

She is certain to come.

她一定会来。

I don't know for certain when he will come.

我不确定他什么时候来。

It's certain that the earth is round.

地球是圆的这一点是肯定的。

I'm certain of your success.=I'm certain that you will succeed.

我确信你一定会成功。

I'm not certain whether she will go with us.

我没把握她会不会跟我们去。

Make certain of his safe arrival.

要确保他安全到达。

Let's make certain that we'll get seats.

我们要确保有座位。

## **5. compare v. 比较, 对照**

### **[基本构词]**

comparison n. 比较, 对照

### **[短语搭配]**

compare sth to sth 把.....和.....比较; 把.....比拟为.....

compare sth with sth 把.....和.....比较

compare with sth 匹敌 (常否定)

(When)compared with/to 与...相比 (作状语)

make a comparison with 与.....比较

in comparison with 较之.....

### **[典型例句]**

He began to compare himself with the other students.

他开始拿自己和其他同学相比。

Young people are compared to the rising sun.

年轻人被比作正在升起的太阳。

My works don't compare with yours.

我的作品没法和你的相比。

When compared with the size of the whole earth, the biggest ocean doesn't seem big.

与整个地球相比, 最大的海洋也不那么大了。

## **6. pick v. 拾起; 采集; 挑选**

### **[短语搭配]**

pick up 拾起; 收拾; 学到; 获得; 收听; 用车来接

pick out 挑选出; 拣出; 辨认出

pick flowers 摘花

pick one's pocket 扒钱

### [典型例句]

We would pick the right person for the work.

我们将为这项工作挑选合适的人选。

Shall I pick you up at the station?

要我去火车站接你吗？

He picked up French when he was in France.

他在法国期间学了很多法语。

Can you pick out the man in the crowd?

你能在人群中认出那个人吗？

### **7. manage v. 管理；设法对付**

#### [基本构词]

manager n. 经理

management n. 管理；经营

#### [短语搭配]

manage to do sth 设法做成某事

#### [典型例句]

Your mother has a genius for managing such things.

你母亲有管理此类事情的才能。

Do you suppose you can manage to get me a passport?

你认为你能给我弄到护照吗？

#### [词语辨析]

**try to do sth 和 manage to do sth 的用法比较**

▲ try to do sth 指试图做某事，但不知是否成功。（过程）

▲ manage to do sth 指设法做成某事。（结果）

The hunter tried to escape from the forest, but he lost his way.

猎人设法逃出森林，但他迷路了。

She managed to pass the driving test with my help.

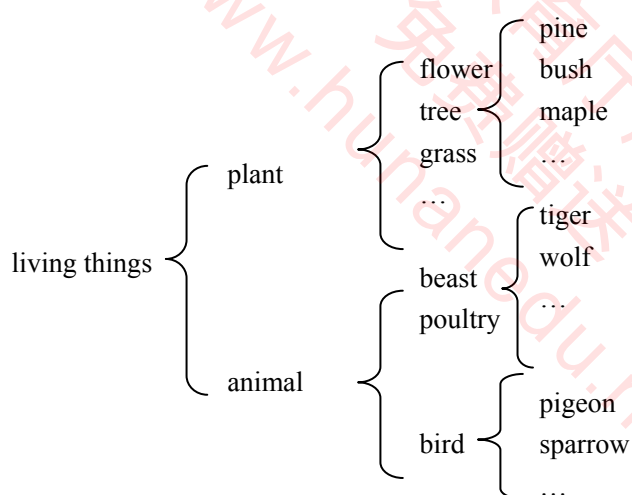
在我的帮助下，她通过了驾驶考试。

### 三、【学法指导】

#### (二) 学习策略

##### 8. 分类记忆法

根据词的语义，把词进行整理能更清楚相关词汇的语义关系，有助于对这些词的理解和记忆。如根据表气候、表季节、表月份、表人物、表交通工具、表衣物等把所学单词根据“同义场”进行分类，集中记忆。这些词有某种联系，由一个会牵到另一个，如：



### 四、【习题训练】

#### A 组

##### I. 用适当的介词填空

1. Do you think Bill Gates' achievement has great effect \_\_\_\_\_ our lives today?
2. The area is known \_\_\_\_\_ a green tea producer.



3. His name will go down \_\_\_\_\_ history with a great success.
4. Preparations must be based \_\_\_\_\_ your economic ability.
5. They are going to set sail \_\_\_\_\_ England next month.
6. You should have told us about it \_\_\_\_\_ advance.
7. I had been willing to apply \_\_\_\_\_ the position, but it was soon taken by another person.
8. When he was a child, he was brave and curious \_\_\_\_\_ all the animals.
9. Be careful! Please drive \_\_\_\_\_ a safe speed.
10. His father ran a successful business \_\_\_\_\_ his thirties.

**II. 单项填空** 从 A、B、C、D 四个选项中，选出可以填入空白处的最佳选项。

1. All the people \_\_\_\_\_ at the party were his supporters.  
A. present                      B. thankful                      C. interested                      D. important
2. His mother fell ill \_\_\_\_\_ a fever last night, so he had to stay at home to look after her.  
A. at                              B. over                              C. for                              D. with
3. Countless stock investors spent \_\_\_\_\_ money on stock last year.  
A. a plenty of                      B. a number of                      C. a good many                      D. a great deal of
4. Teachers are always \_\_\_\_\_ gardeners while children flowers.  
A. compared with                                              B. compared for  
C. comparing to                                              D. compared to
5. She doesn't speak \_\_\_\_\_ her friend, but her written work is very good.  
A. as well as                                              B. as better as  
C. so good as                                              D. as good as
6. \_\_\_\_\_ getting off the train, he was seized by two policemen.  
A. In                              B. Upon                              C. By                              D. From
7. It isn't quite \_\_\_\_\_ whether he will be present at the meeting.  
A. sure                              B. exact                              C. correct                              D. certain
8. E-mail, as well as mobile phones, \_\_\_\_\_ an important part in daily communication.

A. is playing      B. have played      C. are playing      D. play

9. He \_\_\_\_\_ there in time, but he was late again.

A. managed to get      B. tried to get  
C. tried getting      D. managed getting

10. ——What a big storm!

——Yes, it surely \_\_\_\_\_ our crops.

A. has a bad effect to      B. make a bad effect in  
C. has a bad effect on      D. has a good effect on

### B 组

完成译文 根据中文原文完成下列各英文译文。（每空限填一个词）

1. 长远看，辛勤劳动最终会有好结果。

Hard work \_\_\_\_\_ in the long term.

2. 他说他当时正在家看电视，与这起凶杀案无关。

He said he was at home at that time watching TV and he had nothing to \_\_\_\_\_ the murder.

3. 他对修车很有经验，因此有资格做这份工作。

He is quite experienced at repairing cars, so he \_\_\_\_\_ the job.

4. 如果这种病毒被吸进去的话将会导致疾病甚至死亡。

If \_\_\_\_\_, the virus can result in illness or even death.

5. 那个问题与我们正在讨论的话题没有关系。

That question is not \_\_\_\_\_ the subject that we're discussing.

6. 他一生中发现了许多令人惊奇的东西。

\_\_\_\_\_, he discovered many amazing things.

7. 他终于实现了成为一名冠军的梦想。

At last he \_\_\_\_\_ that he wanted to be a champion.

8. 他是一个了不起的老师，所有的学生都尊敬他。

He is such an excellent teacher that all his students \_\_\_\_\_ him.

### C 组

用括号内所提供的单词的适当形式填空。

1. It was Columbus, a great \_\_\_\_\_ (explore) that discovered America.
2. As a young man, he was very brave and \_\_\_\_\_ (adventure).
3. Present at the meeting are the world-famous \_\_\_\_\_ (art).
4. The \_\_\_\_\_ (discover) of oil on their land made the village rich.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ (strange) enough, he has never watched that television talk show before.
6. We are in great need of money for the \_\_\_\_\_ (science) research.
7. The government has sent help to the \_\_\_\_\_ (survive) of the earthquake.
8. Our habits and customs are quite different from those of \_\_\_\_\_ (west) in some aspects.
9. It appears to me that his \_\_\_\_\_ (explain) doesn't hold water.
10. We now know more mountain gorillas are protected by the government and various \_\_\_\_\_ (organize).

## 一、【学习目标】

1. 掌握和感官有关的常用单词、词组与句型。
2. 学会运用所学词汇描述天气，讲小故事等。

### ★重要词组：

watch out for ...留心...	make achievements 取得成就
glance at 扫视	in sight 看得到
stare(up) at (抬头)凝视	wish for 盼望
make a decision 做出决定	set off 出发
reach out 伸出(手)	bang into 不小心撞到
pay back 报答，偿还	work out 制定
turn to 变成	go hungry 挨饿
lose sight of 看不见	in the distance 在远处
make the most of 充分利用	set sail for ... 启航
the sixth sense 第六感	make sense 有意义
ring out 发出响亮的声音	warm sb. up 使某人暖和起来
express one's thanks to sb. 向某人致谢	be frozen with fear 由于害怕而呆住
can't help doing 禁不住作某事	in everyday life 在日常生活中
hold sb still 使某人一动不动	be likely to do 很有可能做
over a long distance 越过很长的一段距离	rather than 而不是；宁愿

## 二、【要点解读】

## **1. still adj./adv. 静止不动; 仍然; 还要, 更**

### **[基本构词]**

stillness n. 静止

### **[典型例句]**

Are you still working for the same firm?

你仍然在为同一家公司工作吗?

The children wouldn't keep still.

那些孩子不会一动不动的。

It's still hotter in July.

七月份更热。

### **[词语辨析]**

#### **still, quiet, silent 的用法比较**

▲ 修饰环境时: quiet 指没有吵闹干扰; still 指完全没有声音。

▲ 修饰人时: quiet 指性情温和、安静等; still 指“一动不动”; silent 侧重“沉默”、“不说话”, 但不一定不动。

## **2. sense v. & n. 意识到; 感官, 感觉**

### **[短语搭配]**

make sense 讲得通; 有意义

make sense of 懂得, 理解

common sense 常识

a sense of direction 方向感

in a/ some sense 在某种意义上

### **[典型例句]**

Richard has a great sense of humor.

Richard 很幽默。

In what sense are you using the word?

你用这个词是什么意思？

A dog has a keen sense of smell.

狗的嗅觉灵敏。

The mouse sensed danger and slipped quietly.

老鼠感觉到了危险，悄悄地溜走了。

### [词语辨析]

#### sense 和 feel 的用法比较

▲feel 是常用词，含义广泛，可以表示感官、情感、想法等。

▲sense 是正式用词，指“隐约感到”，不是凭感官而是凭直觉，不可跟表示“冷，热，饿”等的名词或形容词。

I felt cold. 我感到冷。

I sensed danger. 我感觉到有危险。

Nothing feels right in our new house.

我们新房子里，样样都觉得不对劲。

She sensed what her mother was thinking.

她领悟到了妈妈的想法。

### 3. beat v. 跳动；（接连）地打；打败

#### [短语搭配]

beat down 击败，摧毁

beat up 暴打某人

#### [典型例句]

My heart is beating faster than usual.

我的心跳得比平时更快。

My father will beat me up if I do this.

如果我那样做的话，我父亲会暴打我一顿。

### 4. prove v. 证明是（系动词）；证明（及物动词）

### [基本构词]

proof n. 证据

### [典型例句]

His suspicions (怀疑) proved (to be) correct.

结果证明他的怀疑是正确的。

Can you prove your theory?

你能证明你的理论吗?

## 5. add v. 补充说; 增加

### [基本构词]

addition n. 增加; 增加物

### [短语搭配]

add up 加起来

add up to 总计, 达到

add...to... 把.....加入到.....

add to 增加

### [典型例句]

He explained, and added that he was sorry.

他解释了并且说很抱歉。

His illness had added to their difficulties.

他的疾病增加了他们的困难。

Add your scores up and we will see who won.

把你们的比分加起来看谁赢了。

Little changes add up to a great change.

小变化累积成大变化。

## 6. avoid v. 避免

### [基本构词]

avoidance n. 避免

avoidable adj. 可避免的

### [短语搭配]

avoid (doing) sth 避免, 回避

### [典型例句]

He drove carefully to avoid the holes in the road.

为了避开路上的那些坑, 他开得很细心。

It's best to avoid going out in the strong midday sun.

在中午太阳光线很强的时候, 你最好避免外出。

## 三、【学法指导】

### (三) 答题技巧

#### 1. 利用动词词组中的介词或副词确定正确选项

命题人员想考查考生是否掌握了某一动词词组的用法, 在设计四个选项时, 有时会让一个动词出现在四个选项中, 在做这一类题时, 我们可以根据上下文以及动词后边的介词或副词进行推导。如:

1) Having decided to rent a flat, we \_\_\_\_ contacting all the accommodation agencies in the city.

A. set about

B. set down

C. set out

D. set up

从动词后的 4 个介词来看, 只有 about 有表示“将来”的意思, 所以 A 为正确项。about 是介词, 因此它后面需要用-ing 形式。

2) When he realized the police had spotted him, the man \_\_\_\_ the exit as quickly as possible.

A. made off

B. made for

C. made out

D. made up

空格处要填的是表示“走向”之意, 这里只有“for”表示在同一水平线上“向.....方向”。句中有 exit 一词, 表示 the man 是在一建筑物内, 所以不能用 out the exit, 而且 out 是一个副词, 后面接名词时需要有介词 of, 所以正确项是 B。

#### 2. 利用动词词组中的动词确定选项



有些题的四个选项中的介词或副词一样，这时我们就可以利用动词的区别来确定正确项。如：

If you \_\_\_\_\_ the bottle and cigarettes, you'll be much healthier.

- A. take off      B. keep off      C. get off      D. set off

keep 与 off 合在一起是“与.....保持距离，远离.....”的意思，根据句义“如果你不喝酒、吸烟，你就会更健康”，正确选项为 B。

#### 四、【习题训练】

##### A 组

单项填空 从 A、B、C、D 四个选项中，选出可以填入空白处的最佳选项。

1. When he woke up, he found \_\_\_\_\_ lying in a bed.

- A. him      B. himself      C. his      D. he

2. You've \_\_\_\_\_ a word in that sentence.

- A. left out      B. left for      C. left behind      D. left off

3. The fact \_\_\_\_\_ Polly didn't ask for the man's name is a pity.

- A. what      B. that      C. which      D. 不填

4. \_\_\_\_\_ is reported that many young people go to big cities to earn money.

- A. This      B. That      C. It      D. As

5. When do you think \_\_\_\_\_ back to our company?

- A. will Mr. Huang come      B. Mr. Huang comes  
C. does Mr. Huang come      D. Mr. Huang will come

6. She's \_\_\_\_\_ to get upset if you ask her about it.

- A. likely      B. probable      C. possible      D. maybe

7. The competition has proved to be\_\_\_\_\_.

- A. great success      B. successfully      C. succeed      D. a great success

8. It was \_\_\_\_\_ yesterday that we had to stay at home.

- A. so bad weather B. such bad weather
- C. so bad a weather D. such a bad weather
9. By the time we graduate from the university next year, we \_\_\_\_\_ in this city for 5 years.
- A. will stay B. have stayed C. would stay D. will have stayed
10. Two years \_\_\_\_\_ he became President.
- A. latter B. late C. lately D. later
11. You can \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of problems by using traveler's checks.
- A. avoid B. escape C. lose D. flee
12. The fall in the cost of living is directly \_\_\_\_\_ the drop in the oil price.
- A. connecting to B. related to C. relating with D. related with
13. The price of oil has \_\_\_\_\_ sharply to \$12 a barrel.
- A. cut B. dropped C. reduced D. down
14. I tried all I could \_\_\_\_\_ the topic at the meeting, but failed.
- A. to avoid to mention B. to avoid mentioning
- C. avoiding to mention D. avoiding mentioning
15. The new type of car \_\_\_\_\_ is on hot sale.
- A. fed with gas B. feeding on gas
- C. is fed on gas D. is fed with gas

完成译文 根据中文原文完成下列各英文译文。(每空限填一个词)

According to the weather report, it \_\_\_\_\_ rain next morning.

I saw an old man \_\_\_\_\_ in the street, with a walking stick in his hand.

By the time he was 20 years old, he \_\_\_\_\_ two novels.

4. 当这群孩子意识到自己迷路时，他们都禁不住哭了起来。

When they realized that they got lost, the children \_\_\_\_\_.

5. 当她苏醒过来时，发现自己正躺在医院了。

When she came to herself, she \_\_\_\_\_ in hospital.

6. 孩子们一到床上，就会很快入睡了。

Once in bed, the children will \_\_\_\_\_ very soon.

### C 组

用括号中所给单词的适当形式填空

glance at, reach out, watch out for, pay back, get...across, in sight,

1. What problems should I \_\_\_\_\_ when buying an old house?
2. He \_\_\_\_\_ and his hand touched rough-grained (粗糙的纹理) wood.
3. When he saw a big bear coming towards him, he \_\_\_\_\_ fright.
4. The boys were so hungry that on arriving home they ate everything \_\_\_\_\_.
5. He is not very good at \_\_\_\_\_ his ideas \_\_\_\_\_.
6. I couldn't have been happier: there was nothing else I could \_\_\_\_\_.
7. It would \_\_\_\_\_ for the parents to join in this discussion with their children.
8. We all \_\_\_\_\_ each other, saying nothing, and walked after him.
9. The person told me that he was trying to find every chance to \_\_\_\_\_ the help that people gave him when in trouble.
10. Now that we are here, we must \_\_\_\_\_ this opportunity to learn more.

## 一、【学习目标】

1. 掌握和语言有关的常用单词、词组与句型。
2. 学会运用所学词汇进行调查，并制作一个 booklet。

### ★本单元重要词组：

stand for 代表	all over the world 全世界
be made up of 由.....组成	differ from 不同于
consist of 由.....构成	lift up 拿起，举起
back and forth 来回	take control of 控制
a waste of time 浪费时间	work as 担当；担任
as a whole 总体上	mother tongue 母语
look into one's eyes 直视某人	lose face 丢脸
in addition 另外	throw away 丢掉
right away 立刻	in a word 总之
sort out 安排，拣选，分类	instead of 代替，而不是
set a standard 确立标准	take action 采取行动
what if 倘使.....将会怎样	care about 关心，担心
look up 查找，向上看	Chinese character 中国汉字
at one time 一度，曾经	agree with 同意，适应
turn into 使变成	body language 肢体语言
sign language 手语	up and down 上上下下
official language 官方语言	have an impact on 对.....造成冲击
replace....with...用.....来替代...	have a word with sb.和某人说句话
depend on 依靠；视...而定	mix ... with... 把.....与.....混和

contribute to 有助于，是.....的成因之一 get along with 进展，相处  
undergo huge changes 经历巨大的变化

## 二、【要点解读】

### 1. confuse vt. 使迷惑；使...更难于理解

#### [基本构词]

confused adj. 迷惑的；混乱的；难懂的

confusing adj. 使人迷惑的

confusion n. [U/C] 困惑；混淆；混乱状态

#### [典型例句]

It was a very confusing situation.

这是一个非常令人困惑的局面。

The instructions on the box are very confusing.

盒子上的使用说明含混不清。

The old lady easily gets confused.

这个老太婆容易迷糊。

They asked so many questions that they confused me.

他们问了许多问题，把我弄糊涂了。

His confusing statements puzzled me.

他的陈述使我迷惑。

### 2. mix v. 和.....混合，掺和

#### [基本构词]

mixture n. 混合，混合体

mixer n. 搅拌机，混合器

mixed adj. 混合的，混杂的

mixed-up adj. 糊涂的, 迷惑不解的, 头脑不清的

**[短语搭配]**

mix up 混淆; 弄混

mix sth together 把某物混在一起

mix sth into sth 将.....加进.....中混匀

**[典型例句]**

Don't try to mix business with pleasure.

不要把正事和娱乐混在一起。

The water is mixed with sugar.

这水中掺得有糖。

I mixed him up with his brother.

我把他和他弟弟混淆了。

**3. contribute v. 捐赠; 撰稿; 做出贡献; 有助于, 促成**

**[基本构词]**

contributor n. 贡献者, 捐助者, 赠送者

contribution n. 贡献

contributive adj. 贡献的, 出资的, 助长.....的

**[短语搭配]**

contribute (sth) to= make contributions to 对.....有贡献; 向.....捐赠/撰稿; 有助于; 促成

**[典型例句]**

He contributed half of his savings to the relief fund.

他将积蓄的一半捐献给救济基金会。

He never contributes to the discussion.

他在讨论时从不发表意见。

Drink contributed to his ruin.

酗酒促使他毁灭。

#### 4. spoil v. 糟蹋, 破坏, 溺爱

##### [基本构词]

spoilt adj. 宠坏, 损坏

##### [典型例句]

The cook had spoilt/spoiled the soup by putting too much salt in it.

由于厨师放太多的盐, 把汤糟蹋了。

The food will spoil if you don't keep it cool.

这种食物如果不冷藏就会变质。

His grandmother spoils him.

他奶奶把他宠坏了。

#### 5. prefer v. 喜欢; 宁愿

##### [基本构词]

preference n. 偏爱, 优先, 喜爱物

preferable adj. 更好的, 更合意的

##### [短语搭配]

prefer A to B = prefer A rather than B 在 A 和 B 之间较喜欢 A。

prefer doing A to doing B 宁愿做 A 而不愿做 B

prefer sb (not) to do sth 宁愿某人(不)干.....

prefer to do sth rather than do sth 宁愿干.....也不愿干.....

##### [典型例句]

Which do you prefer, tea or coffee?

你是喜欢喝茶还是咖啡?

He prefers playing basketball.

他喜欢大篮球。

I prefer him to do it in a different way.

我更希望他用不同的方法去做。

He prefers swimming to surfing.

同冲浪相比,他更喜欢游泳。

She prefers to stay at home rather than (to)go with us.

她宁愿呆在家里,也不愿和我们一起去。

#### **10. occur vi. 发生; (主意) 被想到**

##### **[基本构词]**

occurrence n. 发生,事件,发现

##### **[短语搭配]**

occur to 被想起,被想到,浮现

It occurs (to sb) that- 某人突然想起

##### **[典型例句]**

Earthquakes occur frequently in this area.

这一地区经常发生地震。

It never occurred to me that he might be in trouble.

我怎么也没有想到他会遇上麻烦。

A brilliant idea occurred to me.

我想到一个极好的主意。

##### **[词语辨析]**

**take place, happen, occur, come about 和 break out 的用法比较**

这些词或短语都有“发生”的意思,都是不及物动词,不能用于被动语态,但用法各不相同,区别如下:

▲ **take place** 表示“发生、举行、举办”,一般指非偶然性事件的“发生”,即这种事件的发生一定有某种原因或事先的安排。例如:

Great changes have taken place in our hometown during the past ten years.

在过去的十年我的家乡发生了巨大变化。

▲ **happen** 作“发生、碰巧”解,一般用于偶然或突发性事件。例如:

What happened to you?

你出了什么事?

I happened to see him on my way home. = It happened that I saw him on my way home.



我碰巧在回家的路上看见他。

▲**occur** 作“发生”解，其意义相当于 **happen**。例如：

What has occurred? (= What has happened?) 发生了什么事？

A big earthquake occurred (= happened) in the south of China last year.

去年中国南部发生了一场大地震。

但是 **occur** 有“突然被想起，突然浮现”的意思，例如：

It occurred to me that she didn't know I had moved into the new house.

我想起她不知道我搬进了新家。

▲**come about** 表示“发生、产生”，多指事情已经发生了，但还不知道为什么，常用于疑问句和否定句。例如：

Do you know how the air accident came about?

你知道这次飞机失事是怎样发生的吗？

▲**break out** 意思为“发生、爆发”，常指战争、灾难、疾病或者争吵等事件的发生，也可以表示突然大声叫喊等。例如：

Two world wars broke out last century.

上个世纪爆发了两次世界大战。

A fire broke out in the hospital in the mid-night.

午夜时一场火灾发生了。

### 三、【学法指导】

#### (三) 答题技巧

#### 3. 释义参照型+近义词

由于句子之间语义的关联，句中一部分有时对另一部分构成解释关系，我们可以根据已经明示的部分来确定选项。如：

The medicine is on sale everywhere. You can get it at \_\_\_\_ chemist's.

A. each

B. some

C. certain

D. any

前一句中的 everywhere 就决定了第二句中的空格处填(at)any(chemist's)。正确项为 D。

#### 4. 因果参照型+近义词

指在一句或两句话中，要么通过“因”推出“果”，要么通过“果”推出“因”。这是利用语法关系去确定选项，如：

1) Some old people don't like pop songs because they can't \_\_\_\_\_ so much noise.

- A. refuse                  B. regain                  C. stand                  D. contribute

从 don't like..., 推出后边的 can't stand, 表示“不能容忍”的意思。正确项为 C。

2) Since the matter was extremely \_\_\_\_\_, we dealt with it immediately.

- A. tough                  B. tense                  C. urgent                  D. instant

后半句中的副词 immediately 可以推出前半句中的 urgent。正确项为 C。

#### 5. 转折或反义与对比参照型

这种类型题有的是通过转折词、反义词、或对比词来确定选项，有的是通过句中词来确定选项中的转折词。

1) \_\_\_\_\_ their differences, the couple loved each other deeply.

- A. But for                  B. In spite of                  C. Above all                  D. Except for

句中的 their differences, loved each other deeply 可确定选项中只能是转折词 In spite of 正确项为 B。

2) These goods are \_\_\_\_\_ for export, though a few of them may be sold on the home market.

- A. mainly                  B. completely                  C. Necessarily                  D. possibly

通过转折词 though 和对比词 export 与 home market 可确定选项为 A。

3) Mr. Morgan can be very sad \_\_\_\_\_, though in public he is extremely cheerful.

- A. by himself                  B. in person                  C. in private                  D. as individual

通过后半句的转折词 though 和对比词 in public, cheerful 来确定 sad in private (私下里)。正确项为 C。

### 四、【习题训练】

A 组

单项填空 从 A、B、C、D 四个选项中, 选出可以填入空白处的最佳选项。

1. A modern city has been set up in \_\_\_\_\_ was a wasteland ten years ago.  
A. What                      B. which                      C. that                      D. where
2. Carl Linnaeus made great contributions to \_\_\_\_\_ plant species.  
A. group                      B. have grouped                      C. grouping                      D. have been grouping
3. Please bring an umbrella with you \_\_\_\_\_ it rains.  
A. in which case                      B. in that case                      C. in case                      D. in case of
4. In Britain today, women \_\_\_\_\_ 44% of the workforce, and nearly half the mothers with children are in paid work.  
A. take up                      B. make up                      C. pick up                      D. give up
5. He \_\_\_\_\_ all his time and energy to his work.  
A. spent                      B. cost                      C. contributed                      D. took
6. The instructions were so \_\_\_\_\_ that I've done it all wrong.  
A. confused                      B. confusing                      C. confuse                      D. confusingly
7. If you sing several times, your children will begin to \_\_\_\_\_ the words.  
A. pick out                      B. pick at                      C. pick up                      D. pick over
8. What does the milk taste if \_\_\_\_\_ with orange juice?  
A. mixed                      B. mixing                      C. is mixed                      D. to mix
9. —You were out when I dropped in at your house.  
—Oh, I \_\_\_\_\_ for a friend from England at the airport.  
A. was waiting                      B. had waited                      C. am waiting                      D. have waited
10. It now seems \_\_\_\_\_ that Pam will lose her license.  
A. sure                      B. certain                      C. certainly                      D. surely

B 组

完成译文 根据中文原文完成下列各英文译文。(每空限填一个词)

1. 他对公司的成功作出了重要的贡献。

He has made an important \_\_\_\_\_ the company's success.

2. 计算机对现代生活产生了重大影响。

The computer has made a great \_\_\_\_\_ modern life.

3. 这起事故导致两名乘客死亡。

The accident \_\_\_\_\_ two passengers dying.

4. 尽管生病，他还是来参加会议。

He came to the meeting \_\_\_\_\_.

5. 她是典型的上流社会人物。

She is a typical product of \_\_\_\_\_.

6. 坐你对面的那个女孩是谁啊?

Who is the girl \_\_\_\_\_ you?

7. 他们提一大堆问题，把我都弄糊涂了。

They \_\_\_\_\_ by asking so many questions.

8. 你老是把我和我孪生妹妹弄混了!

You're always \_\_\_\_\_ with my twin sister.

### C 组

根据上下文和首字母完成句子。

1. You should read more to enrich your v\_\_\_\_\_.

2. In July, 2004 China opened its citizens' tourist travel to many E\_\_\_\_\_ countries, such as France, Italy and Switzerland.

3. This large international company has branches t\_\_\_\_\_ the world.

4. Singapore has four o\_\_\_\_\_ languages, that is, English, Malay, Chinese and Tamil.

5. Government promises to c\_\_\_\_\_ more jobs for laid-off workers.

## 一、【学习目标】

1. 学习与历史事件有关的常用单词、词组与句型。
2. 学会运用所学词汇谈论有关旅游的话题。

### ★本单元重要词组:

be in use 在使用中	set sail for 启航去.....
by the time 到.....时候	as early as 早在
in the future 将来	take over 接管, 接任, 控制
lead to 导致	in memory of 纪念
in return for 作为...的回报	lost civilization 失落的文明
carry out 实施, 执行, 进行	no more 不再
pour out 涌出, 倾泻	more than 多于, 不仅仅
be buried alive 被活埋	be covered with 被.....覆盖
on board 在船上, 飞机上或火车上	in good condition 处于良好的状态
prevent sb. from sth/ doing sth 阻止某人做某事	declare war against 向.....宣传

## 二、【要点解读】

### 1. destroy v. 毁坏, 使毁坏

#### [基本构词]

destruction n. 毁坏

#### [典型例句]

The school was completely destroyed by the fire.

大火把学校给彻底毁灭了。

His acts destroyed his influence.

他的举止使他威望扫地。

### [词语辨析]

#### **destroy 和 damage 的用法比较**

▲destroy 指“十分彻底的破坏”，不可修复，多指不可抗拒的外接力量。

▲damage 指“部分的破坏”，可以修复，只是不能正常发挥作用，常常指因人的过失造成。  
如：The accident damaged the car badly. 这个事故严重损坏了这辆车。

#### **2. drive vt. 迫使；驱赶 n. 内在的驱动力或欲求**

##### [常用搭配]

drive off 开车送走；击退；赶走

drive sb to do sth 迫使某人做某事

drive somebody crazy/wild 使某人发疯

##### [典型例句]

He drove her to admit it.

他逼迫她承认。

This cough is driving me mad!

该死的咳嗽快把我逼疯了！

I think he has the drive needed for this job.

我认为他很有工作动力。

#### **3. likewise adv. 同样地，也**

##### [典型例句]

The food was excellent, and likewise the wine.

菜好酒也好。

I told him to watch me and do likewise.

我叫他仔细看着我,并且照样做。

注意：likewise 可以做状语来修饰整个句子，常放在句首，用逗号与后面的句子隔开。如：

The clams (蛤蜊) were delicious. Likewise, the eggplant (茄子) was excellent.

### 三、【学法指导】

#### (三) 答题技巧

#### 6. 反义对比参照型+近义词

这里指的是利用句子主干中的某词或短语，再加上四个近义词选项的区别来确定正确选项。

1) I think she hurt my feelings \_\_\_\_\_ rather than by accident as she claimed.

- A. actually 实际上      B. purposely 故意地      C. orally 口头地      D. properly 适当地

通过 rather than 可知 by accident 与空格处相对。by accident 的意思是“偶然地，不经意地”，与此相对的应当是 purposely“故意地”，故正确项为 B。

2) As an excellent shooter, Peter practiced aiming at both \_\_\_\_\_ targets and moving targets.

- A. standing 站立的      B. immobile 不动的      C. silent 沉默的      D. firm 坚定的

both...and”表明 moving 与空格处相对，moving 的意思是“移动的”，与此相对的应是 immobile，表示“固定的，非移动的”的意思。故正确项为 B。

#### 7. 语意环境参照型

1) The president made a \_\_\_\_\_ speech at the opening ceremony of the sports meeting, which encouraged the sportsmen greatly.

- A. inspiring 鼓舞人心的      B. long 长的      C. dull 枯燥的      D. changeable 多变的

encourage 表明了校长所作发言的特点是积极的，肯定的，所以只有 inspiring（鼓舞人心）意思符合。故正确项为 A。

2) However, at times this balance in nature is \_\_\_\_\_, resulting in a number of possibly unforeseen effects.

- A. troubled 困扰的      B. disturbed 破坏的      C. confused 困惑的      D. puzzled 迷惑的

从句子的后半部分的 result in effects 可知 balance in nature 受到了破坏。disturb 符合句义。故正确项为 B。

#### 8. 根据词的同现确定正确选择项

同现即同一组词总会出现于同一个语义场中。考试题中出现的同现现象主要是动词与名词的同现、形容词与名词的同现、名词与名词的同现。

1) The government is trying to do something to \_\_\_\_ better understanding between the two countries.

- A. raise                      B. promote                      C. heighten                      D. increase

better 和空格处的内容属动词和名词的重现。4 个选项中只有 promote 才能和 better understanding 搭配，表示“促进”的意思。故正确项是 B。

2) John Dewey believed that education should be a preparation for life, that a person learns by doing, and that teaching must \_\_\_\_ the curiosity and creativity of children.

- A. seek                      B. motivate                      C. shape                      D. save

所给 4 个选项中只有 motivate 才能和 curiosity 和 creativity 同现，表示“激励，激发”的意思。故正确项是 B。

3) Remember that customers don't \_\_\_\_ about prices in that city.

- A. debate                      B. argue                      C. quarrel                      D. bargain

句中 customers, prices 和选项中的 bargain 可以出现在同一语义场中。bargain about 意思是：就...讨价还价。故正确项是 D。

#### 四、【习题训练】

##### A 组

单项填空 从 A、B、C、D 四个选项中，选出可以填入空白处的最佳选项。

1. According to the manager, the business plan will help the company \_\_\_\_ other small businesses and help them become the number one business over the next 50 years.

- A. take out                      B. take control                      C. take over                      D. rule out

2. It's many years since Mount Vesuvius last \_\_\_\_.

- A. discovered                      B. happened                      C. erupted                      D. came about

3. Cut the fruit in half and \_\_\_\_ the seeds.

- A. hit                      B. remove                      C. take                      D. dig

4. Many people are still buried \_\_\_\_ after the earthquake.

- A. living                      B. alive                      C. lively                      D. live



5. Nobody can \_\_\_\_ us \_\_\_\_ getting married. Which of the following is WRONG?  
A. stop; from      B. prevent; from      C. forbid; /      D. keep; from
6. The house was completely \_\_\_\_ by the fire.  
A. damaged      B. destroyed      C. caused      D. beaten
7. \_\_\_\_, Dr Cole cannot spend as long with each patient as she would like.  
A. Hopefully      B. Unfortunately      C. Luckily      D. Gradually
8. Mr. Brown is a world-famous professor who is \_\_\_\_ in experience.  
A. wealthy      B. rich      C. well off      D. plenty
9. The evidence was gradually covered \_\_\_\_ by the heavy snow that night.  
A. with      B. in      C. over      D. down
10. I find the \_\_\_\_ of buildings \_\_\_\_ under the sand.  
A. remaining; buried      B. remainders, bury  
C. remains; buried      D. remains, burying

### B 组

完成译文 根据中文原文完成下列各英文译文。（每空限填一个词）

1. 作为英语学习者，你要做的第一桩事就是买一本英汉词典。

As an English learner, the first thing \_\_\_\_\_ is to buy an English-Chinese dictionary.

2. Titanic 客轮撞上冰山，带着一千多人沉到海里。

The passenger ship Titanic hit an iceberg and sank into the sea with over one thousand people \_\_\_\_\_.

3. 演讲时，你必须提高嗓门以引起听众注意。

When making a speech, you should raise your voice to attract your \_\_\_\_\_.

4. 这家图书馆是为了纪念那位科学家而建的。

This library was built \_\_\_\_\_ the scientist.

5. 火灾过后，房子所剩无几。

After the fire, very little \_\_\_\_\_ of the house.

6. 指挥部决定在黎明时分对敌人发起突然袭击。

The headquarters decided to make a sudden \_\_\_\_\_ the enemy at daybreak.

7. 如有疑问，请随意提出。

If you have any questions, please \_\_\_\_\_ to ask me.

8. 天安门位于中国首都北京的中心。

Tian'anmen Gate \_\_\_\_\_ in the centre of Beijing, the capital of China.

### C 组

完成句子 从框内选择合适的单词并用其正确形式完成下列各句。

Civilization, ruin, house, wealth, remain, cause, direct, discover, magnificent, destroy
------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

1. Such things are not allowed to happen in a \_\_\_\_\_ society.
2. —What do you think of the house?  
—Very \_\_\_\_\_. I think it must have cost a lot of money.
3. Mr. White told me that they would look for the \_\_\_\_\_ of the fire at once.
4. The Greens \_\_\_\_\_ the poor child for the night.
5. The \_\_\_\_\_ man often goes abroad for his holidays.
6. Scientists are interested in the \_\_\_\_\_ of new chemical elements.
7. The old temple was turned into \_\_\_\_\_ in the fire.
8. He used all his \_\_\_\_\_ money to buy his son a computer.
9. Due to the \_\_\_\_\_ of plants, we suffer sandstorm in the north every spring.
10. Giuseppe Fiorelli was made \_\_\_\_\_ of the Pompeii dig.

## 一、【学习目标】

1. 学习与广告有关的单词、词组与句型。
2. 运用所学词汇读懂与广告有关的文章，并能就此发表观点。

### ★本单元重要词组：

be used to (doing) sth 习惯于(做)某事	share sth with sb 与某人分享某物
encourage sb to do sth 鼓励某人做某事	be aware of 意识到
do some research on sth 做.....的研究	even if 即使
be intended /meant to do sth 旨在做.....	fall for 受.....的骗
protect sb from 保护某人不受.....的伤害	be proud of 以.....感到骄傲
connect ... to... 将.....与.....连接	play tricks on sb 捉弄某人
lead(live) a ...life 过着.....的生活	deal with 处理
be satisfied with 对.....感到满意	believe in sth 信仰；信任
trick sb into doing sth 诱使某人做某事	go on the market 上市
be popular with 受.....的欢迎	be of high quality 高质量
for the benefit of 为了.....的利益	get sb to do sth 使某人做某事
come up with 提出	over and over again 反复地
in order to 为了，以便	up to 达到
be bored with 对.....感到厌倦	day and night 整日整夜
be concerned with 对.....关心；与.....有关	put sth together 组织；汇集
appeal to sb 迎合某人；对.....有吸引力；向.....呼吁	
get sth across 传播(消息等)；使某事被人理解	

## 二、【要点解读】

### 1. be used to (doing) sth 对...习以为常, 习惯于, 适应

#### [词语辨析]

**used to do sth, be used to doing sth 和 be used to do sth 的用法比较**

▲ used to do sth 指的是过去的习惯性动作, 目的在于与现在形成对照。

I used to work hard. 我过去常常努力工作。暗含的意义是: 我现在不努力工作。

▲ be/get/become used to (doing) sth 习惯于, to 是介词。

He was used to the cold weather after he lived there for two years.

在那里住两年后, 他已习惯了寒冷的天气。

I think it is a bit difficult for you to get used to the humid weather here.

我想让你习惯于这里潮湿而炎热的天气有点困难。

You'll soon get used to living in the country.

很快你就会习惯于住在乡下了。

▲ be used to do sth 被用来做某事, to 是不定式符号。

A metal bar was used to force the door open.

用金属棒把门撬开了。

### 2. intend v. 想要, 打算

#### [基本构词]

intended a. 打算的, 预期的; 故意的, 有意的

intention n. 意图, 打算

#### [短语搭配]

intend to do sth 打算做某事

intend sb/sth to do 打算让某人或某物做.....

intend sb/sth for 打算将.....供给.....; 打算使.....成为.....; 想让.....从事.....

be intended to do 是为了(做)

be intended for sth...是为了.....

[典型例句]

Erna intends to take short rests every two hours.

欧娜打算每隔两小时休息片刻。

He intends his son to manage the company.

他打算让他儿子经营该公司。

That trap is intended for you.

那个圈套是为你而设的。

The project is intended to help the earthquake victims.

这个项目旨在帮助地震灾民。

**3. lie 1 (lied, lied) n.& vi. 谎言; 说谎**

**lie 2 (lay, lain) vi. 躺; 卧; 平放; 位于**

[短语搭配]

tell a lie 说谎

lie in 在于.....

lie on one's back /stomach/ side 仰卧/俯卧/侧卧

[典型例句]

He has lain there for 3 days.

他躺在那儿三天了。

He has never lied to me.

他从不对我说谎。

[词语辨析]

词义	现在式	过去式	过去分词	现在分词
躺/位于/卧/平放	lie	lay	lain	lying
说谎	lie	lied	lied	lying

放置, 产(卵), 下蛋	lay	laid	laid	laying
--------------	-----	------	------	--------

#### 4. recommend vt. 推荐; 建议, 劝告

##### [基本构词]

recommendation n. 建议; 推荐

##### [短语搭配]

recommend sb sth = recommend sth to/for sb 向某人推荐.....

recommend sb for sth 推荐某人担任.....

recommend sb as 推荐某人为.....

recommend (sb's/sb) doing 建议某人做某事

recommend sb to do sth 建议某人做某事

recommend that sb (should) do 建议某人做某事

##### [典型例句]

He recommended the young man to our firm (for the post).

他推荐那位年轻人到我们公司 (担任那个职位)。

I can recommend him as an extremely good lawyer.

我推荐他一定能当个极好的律师。

Can you recommend a website for/to me?

你能给我推荐一个网站吗?

Can you recommend me a good novel?

你给我介绍一本好的小说行吗?

I recommend that you (should) resign.

我建议你辞职。

I recommended (you) meeting him first.

我建议 (你) 先见见他。

I wouldn't recommend you to go travelling alone.

我劝你不要孤身一人去旅游。

### 5. convenient a. 便利的，方便的

#### [基本构词]

convenience n. 便利

conveniently ad. 便利地

#### [短语搭配]

be convenient for/to 离（某地）很近便；对（某人）方便

at sb's convenience 在某人方便时

#### [典型例句]

Our school is convenient for (to) the station.

我们学校离车站很近便。

**If it is convenient for (to) you, we'll come tomorrow.**

如果你方便的话，我们就明天来吧。

Please call me back at your convenience.

请你方便的时候回个电话给我。

### 6. determine vt. 决定；决心

#### [基本构词]

determination n. 决心

determined a. 坚定的，坚决的

#### [短语搭配]

determine to do sth 决心做某事

be determined to do sth 决心做某事

determine on /upon sth 对某事下定决心

determine sb to do sth 使某人决心做某事

#### [典型例句]

He is determined to go at once.

他决心立刻就走。

His advice determined me to drink and smoke no more.

他的劝告使我决心不再抽烟喝酒了。

We have determined on/upon an early start.

我们决心早点出发。

### 三、【习题训练】

#### A 组

单项填空 从 A、B、C、D 四个选项中，选出可以填入空白处的最佳选项。

1. This law \_\_\_\_ the number of accidents caused by children running across the road when they get off the bus.  
A. intending to reduce                      B. intends reducing  
C. intended reducing                      D. is intended to reduce
2. Helen is badly ill and has \_\_\_\_ in bed for nearly a month.  
A. laid                      B. lied                      C. lain                      D. lying
3. ——Was the judge \_\_\_\_ with the result?  
——I don't think so. But perhaps no judge is easy \_\_\_\_.  
A. satisfying; satisfied                      B. satisfied; to satisfy  
C. satisfactory; to be satisfied                      D. satisfaction; satisfactory
4. They picked the small town of Tobermory on Mull because the brightly colored houses appeal \_\_\_\_ children.  
A. to                      B. for                      C. against                      D. with
5. Your suggestion is \_\_\_\_ to us.  
A. of very value    B. great valuable    C. of great value    D. very value
6. He left the place, \_\_\_\_ never \_\_\_\_ back again.



- A. determined; to come                      B. being determined; to come  
C. determined; coming                      D. determining; coming
7. Everyone \_\_\_\_\_ part in the sports meet to be held tomorrow.  
A. is supposed to take                      B. has supposed to take  
C. is supposed to have taken                      D. supposed to take
8. ——Excuse me, may I ask you some questions?  
——Sorry, I'm too busy and I haven't even a minute to \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. lose                      B. share                      C. spare                      D. spend
9. We \_\_\_\_\_ him to stop surfing the internet, but he wouldn't.  
A. persuaded                      B. tried to persuade  
C. suggested                      D. demanded
10. He recommended that the prisoners \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. be freed                      B. would be freed                      C. must be freed                      D. free

### B 组

完成译文 根据中文原文完成下列各英文译文。（每空限填一个词）

1. 我上了推销员的当，买了毫无价值的东西。

I was tricked by the salesman \_\_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_\_ worthless goods.

2. 这本词典是为初学者编的。

The dictionary \_\_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_\_ beginners.

3. 他们已习惯于住在农村。

They have got used \_\_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_\_ in the countryside.

4. 明天就开始工作你觉得方便吗?

Will it \_\_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_\_ you to start work tomorrow?

5. 杰克在找另外一份工作，因为他所做的事都不能使老板满意。

Jack is looking for another job because nothing he did \_\_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_\_.

6. 他穿着一件厚厚的大衣御寒。

He is wearing a thick overcoat to \_\_\_\_\_ himself \_\_\_\_\_ the cold.

### C 组

根据上下文和首字母提示完成下面的短文。

What makes a good a\_\_\_\_\_1\_\_\_\_\_? There have been major changes in a\_\_\_\_\_2\_\_\_\_\_ in the past sixty years. People read advertisements partly for i\_\_\_\_\_3\_\_\_\_\_ and partly because they are interesting. Today's advertisements often start with a question, or a puzzle, with the purpose of a\_\_\_\_\_4\_\_\_\_\_ the reader's a\_\_\_\_\_5\_\_\_\_\_. Of course, most advertisements contain information. But this is usually contained in a text that is interesting and often funny. Humor is very important. Sometimes advertisements tell a s\_\_\_\_\_6\_\_\_\_\_, or the story may be c\_\_\_\_\_7\_\_\_\_\_ over a number of advertisements. However, there is a danger in this. It is possible that the reader or viewer will r\_\_\_\_\_8\_\_\_\_\_ the advertisement but not the name of the p\_\_\_\_\_9\_\_\_\_\_.

There are other d\_\_\_\_\_10\_\_\_\_\_. If you are selling your product in a foreign market, you must check that the t\_\_\_\_\_11\_\_\_\_\_ is correct. A company that sold hair cream wanted to say "X puts life into dry hair." They took some p\_\_\_\_\_12\_\_\_\_\_ of a handsome actor, and the advertisements a\_\_\_\_\_13\_\_\_\_\_ on large boards by the side of the road. Nobody bought the product, however, because when translated it meant "X puts living things into dry hair."

In the 1960s a British car company which made very expensive cars was about to sell its latest car in Germany. However, the c\_\_\_\_\_14\_\_\_\_\_ had to change the name of the car at the last moment. A German speaker at the factory pointed out to the s\_\_\_\_\_15\_\_\_\_\_ manager that the British name of the car meant "animal waste" in German.

## 一、【学习目标】

1. 学习与体育运动有关的单词、词组与句型。
2. 运用所学词汇谈论体育运动并能读懂相关的文章。

### ★本单元重要词组:

be delighted to do sth 很高兴做某事	take part in 参加
save time for 省下时间做.....	every four years 每四年, 每隔三年
in honour of 纪念,向.....表示敬意	side by side 共同, 肩并肩
realize one's dream 实现梦想	of all times 有史以来
come to public attention 引起公众关注	at the opening ceremony 在开幕式上
know of 了解	compete for 为获得.....而比赛
recognize... as... 认为/承认/认出.....是.....	break the record 打破纪录
set an example to 为.....树立榜样	compete in 参赛
come up with 想出(计划、主意)	plenty of 许多, 大量
tourist attractions 旅游景	hope for 希望, 期待
be similar to 与.....相似	be involved in 涉及,卷入
keep...under control 使.....处于控制之下	add to 增加
make way for 给.....让路, 让位于	play a role/part in 在.....起作用
meet/satisfy one's requirements 满足需求	maintain a balance 保持平衡

## 二、【要点解读】

**1. honour n. [U] 荣誉, 名誉;面子; 敬意 [C] 光荣的事或人**

**vt. 尊敬, 给予荣誉**

**[基本构词]**

honoured adj. 感到荣幸的

honourable adj. 光荣的, 可敬的, 高尚的

**[短语搭配]**

show honour to sb 尊敬某人, 向.....表示敬意

in honour of 向.....表示敬意

be/feel honoured to do sth 做某事感到荣幸

**[典型例句]**

I am honoured to be asked to speak here.

受邀请在这儿发言我感到非常荣幸。

He was honoured as a hero.

他被授予英雄称号。

The students should show their honour to their teachers.

学生应该尊敬老师。

It was a great honour to be invited here today.

今天承蒙邀请到此, 深感荣幸。

**2. compete vi. 比赛, 竞赛**

**[基本构词]**

competition n. 比赛, 竞赛

competitor n. 竞赛者, 比赛者

competitive adj. 比赛的, 有竞争力的

**[短语搭配]**

compete with / against sb for sth 与.....竞争想获得.....

compete in... 参加.....比赛

compete for 为.....而竞争

**[典型例句]**

Several companies are competing against/with each other for the project.

几家公司为了争取这项工程而互相竞争。

Five children competed in the race.

五个孩子参加赛跑。

**[词语辨析]**

**compete** 和 **complete** 的用法比较

▲ compete vi. 比赛，竞赛

▲ complete a. 完成的 vt. 完成，结束

**3. attempt vt.& n. 试图，尝试**

**[短语搭配]**

on one's first attempt 在第一次尝试时

attempt doing/to do sth 尝试做某事

make an attempt to do sth=make an attempt at doing sth 试图做某事

**[典型例句]**

He attempted to leave but was stopped.

他试图要走,但被拦住了。

He attempted swimming across the river.

他试图要游过河去。

He made no attempt to carry it out.

他没有设法把它付诸实施。

**4. delighted adj. 高兴的，愉快的，欣喜的**

**[基本构词]**

delight n.& v. 快乐，欣喜；（使）快乐

delightful adj. 令人愉快的，令人高兴的

### [短语搭配]

a delighted look 高兴的表情

be delighted to do... 乐于做.....

be delighted at... 因.....而高兴

to one's delight 使某人高兴的是

take delight in doing sth. 以.....为乐

with delight 高兴地

### [典型例句]

My friends are delighted at my success.

我的朋友为我成功而高兴。

The children were made to laugh with delight.

孩子们被逗得高兴地大笑。

I was delighted to be invited to her party.

我很高兴被邀请参加她的晚会。

She takes delight in cooking lovely meals.

她以烹饪美食为乐。

It is a delight to be invited to her birthday party.

受到邀请参加她的生日聚会是很快乐的事。

## 三、【习题训练】

### A 组

I. 单项填空 从 A、B、C、D 四个选项中，选出可以填入空白处的最佳选项。

1. Shelly had prepared carefully for her biology examination so that she could be sure of passing it on her first\_\_\_\_\_.

A. intention

B. attempt

C. purpose

D. desire

2. We have to work hard, \_\_\_\_\_ we'll lose the chance.  
A. so                      B. otherwise      C. then              D. and
3. From his \_\_\_\_\_ voice on the phone I know everything is going well.  
A. delighted              B. delightful      C. delight              D. delighting
4. We'll \_\_\_\_\_ a trip to the mountain next week. Will you \_\_\_\_\_ us?  
A. go to; join in                      B. go on; join  
C. go on with; attend                      D. go into; join
5. —How is Dennis getting along with his work?  
—Well, he could always \_\_\_\_\_ a new idea for increasing sales.  
A. come up with      B. come about      C. get away with      D. get up
6. Will you please write the words \_\_\_\_\_? I mean you write them on the first line and then the third line and so on.  
A. every third line                      B. every second lines  
C. every other lines                      D. every other line
7. Every player tried his best to \_\_\_\_\_ the game.  
A. win                      B. catch                      C. take                      D. beat
8. The head office of the bank is in Beijing, but it has \_\_\_\_\_ all over the country.  
A. companies              B. branches                      C. organizations                      D. businesses
9. Have a good rest, you need to \_\_\_\_\_ your energy for the tennis match this afternoon.  
A. leave                      B. save                      C. hold                      D. get
10. The environmentalists said wild goats' \_\_\_\_\_ on the vast grasslands was a good indication of the better environment.  
A. escape                      B. absence                      C. attendance                      D. appearance

### B 组

完成译文      根据中文原文完成下列各英文译文。（每空限填一个词）

1.将有十名选手在这次百米赛跑中争夺金牌。

Ten runners will \_\_\_\_\_ the gold medal in the 100-metre race.

2.奥运会每四年举行一次。

The Olympic Games are held \_\_\_\_\_.

3.为纪念为国家作出巨大贡献的人建了一个博物馆。

A museum has been built \_\_\_\_\_ those who made great contributions to the country.

4. 游客们高兴地看到公园焕然一新。

The visitors \_\_\_\_\_ to see the park take on a new look.

5. 林肯被认为美国历史上最伟大的总统之一。

Lincoln \_\_\_\_\_ one of the greatest presidents in American history.

6. 她的表演开始受到公众关注。

Her performance has come to \_\_\_\_\_.

7. 他在篮球队中发挥重要作用。

He \_\_\_\_\_ an important \_\_\_\_\_ in the basketball team.

8. 中国对维护世界永久和平做出了巨大贡献。

China has made great \_\_\_\_\_ the ever-lasting peace of the world.

### C 组

根据上下文和首字母提示完成下面的短文。

Two weeks after the opening ceremony the Games are over. The last of the three hundred gold m\_\_\_\_\_1\_\_\_\_\_ has been awarded and the f\_\_\_\_\_2\_\_\_\_\_ of the winners have been raised for the last time. The final event is the closing c\_\_\_\_\_3\_\_\_\_\_. It is a sad occasion because the extreme excitement is over, and it will not happen again for four years. Those who have made friends will have to say goodbye, perhaps for ever. It is also a happy o\_\_\_\_\_4\_\_\_\_\_ because the c\_\_\_\_\_5\_\_\_\_\_ is over and the athletes can really show their friendship for one another.

The closing ceremony is rather like the o\_\_\_\_\_6\_\_\_\_\_. But now the Olympic f\_\_\_\_\_7\_\_\_\_\_ goes out and the Olympic flag, with its five r\_\_\_\_\_8\_\_\_\_\_, is lowered. The person who closes the



Games calls upon the youth of the world to meet again in four years' time. The scoreboard (记分牌) lights up with the name of the city for the next Games and the b\_\_\_\_9\_\_\_\_ starts to play. The celebration starts.

All the athletes try to be at the closing ceremony. They have forgotten all their fears and worries. It does not m\_\_\_\_10\_\_\_\_ whether they have done well or not. All the t\_\_\_\_11\_\_\_\_ walk round the s\_\_\_\_12\_\_\_\_ together. Everybody in the Village clears up and gets ready to l\_\_\_\_13\_\_\_\_. Everyone is hunting for local p\_\_\_\_14\_\_\_\_. People exchange track suits, hats, running vests and so on. There is a last chance to take p\_\_\_\_15\_\_\_\_ and get addresses of new friends. Then each team starts its journey home.

湖南省教育厅版权所有  
www.hunanedu.net  
免费赠送

## 一、【学习目标】

1. 学习与科幻有关的单词、词组与句型。
2. 运用所学词汇能发表对科技发展的观点和看法。

### ★本单元重要词组:

be set in 以.....为背景	a sense of happiness 幸福感
enable sb to do sth 使某人能做某事	pass on 传递
thousands of 成千上万的	be connected to 与.....相连接
put forward 提出(观点、议案等)	in reality 实际上
bring history alive 使历史再现	last but not least 最后但同样重要的
be accused of 被控告犯有.....罪	set up 建立,竖立
close down 关闭,使倒闭	leave sb with... 给某人留下.....
make a profit 赚取利润	go on a virtual trip to 虚拟旅行
belong to 属于	be responsible for 对.....负责
move round 四处移动	sign one's name for 给.....签名
take the risk of 冒.....危险	invest in 投资于
make a profit 获取利润	end in failure 以失败告终
draw a conclusion 得出结论	on display 展览
tell...from... 把.....和.....区分	concentrate on 专注于
go bankrupt 破产	voice one's opinions 表达某人的看法
fall off 从.....上掉下来;脱落	in my opinion 在我看来
come across 遭遇,偶遇	science fiction 科幻小说
tell of 讲述	be trapped in 被困在.....

at a speed of 以.....的速度

with the help of 由于.....的帮助

deliver into 送进

give out 发出(气味、热等); 用完, 耗光; 筋疲力尽

keep/get in touch with 和.....保持(取得)联系

## 二、【要点解读】

**1. besides prep. 除.....以外（还有） ad. 还有，此外（一般用于句子之前）**

### [典型例句]

Besides literature, we have to study history and philosophy.

除了文学，我们还得学历史和哲学。

It's too late to go to the football match now; besides, it's beginning to snow.

现在去看足球比赛已经太晚了，何况，又开始下雪了。

### [词语辨析]

**besides, beside, except, but, except for 和 apart from 的用法比较**

#### ▲besides 与 beside 的区别

作介词时，两词词义有别。beside 意为“在.....旁边”。besides 还可作副词，但 beside 只作介词。

I'd like to sit beside you, you know.

你知道，我愿意坐在你旁边。

Besides knowing some Greek, she was fluent in Italian.

她除了懂些希腊语之外，意大利语也说得很流利。

#### ▲besides 与 except、but 以及 except for 的区别

1) besides 意为“除.....之外”(包括后者在内)，通常与 other, also 等词连用。

What other languages do you know besides English?

除了英语之外，你还懂什么语言？

Besides being wrong, your proposed action is also unwise.

你所建议的行动不仅是错误的，而且是很不明智的。

2) **except** 意为"除.....之外"(不包括后者在内)

They all went to sleep except the young Frenchman.

除那个年轻的法国人外，他们都睡着了。

注:在否定句中，当表达"不包括后者在内"时，也可用 **besides**。

No one passed except / besides Richard.

除了理查德外,谁也没有考及格。

此外，**except** 后可接从句作宾语，也可接不定式作宾语。当其前的动词是实义动词 **do** 及其变化形式时，不定式常省去 **to**。

He hasn't changed at all except that he is no longer so talkative.

他一点也没有变，只是不像以前那样爱说话了。

She always goes to school by bike except when it rains.

除非天下雨，她总是骑自行车上学。

The bear has no choice except to lie down and sleep.

熊没有别的选择，只好躺下睡觉。

I couldn't do anything except just sit down and hope.

我坐在那儿盼着，简直毫无办法。

3) **but** 与 **except** 同义，表示排除，但 **but** 多用在 **every**, **any**, **no** 等和由这些词构成的复合词如 **everything**, **anywhere**, **nobody** 等词以后及 **all**, **none** 之后。

Everybody was invited to the evening party but/except me.

除我之外，所有人都被邀请参加那次晚会。

Yesterday evening, I had nothing to do but/except watch TV.

昨晚除了看电视,我无事可做。

4) **except for** 意为"除去.....之外;只是",表示对一个人或事物先作一个总体评价，然后就其局部提出一点看法，所排除的不是同一范畴的东西。

Your composition is quite good except for a few spelling mistakes.

除了有几个拼写错误外，你的文章写得很好。

### ▲besides 与 apart from 的区别

与 besides 不同之处，apart from 既可表示"排除;例外"的含义(相当于 except)，也可以表示"包括;补充"的含义(相当于 besides)。

The children hardly see anyone apart from their parents.

除了他们的父母，孩子们很少看见其他人。

Apart from being fun and good exercise, swimming is a very useful skill.

除了是有趣和很好的身体锻炼之外，游泳还是一个很有用的技能。

## 2. impress vt. 留下极深的印象

### [基本构词]

impression n. 印象，感觉

impressive adj. 予人深刻印象的;感人的;令人钦佩的

### [短语搭配]

be impressed by/at/with 被.....深深打动/感动

impress sth on/upon sb =impress sb with sth 使某人将某事物铭记在心

impress sth in/on one's memory 使某事铭记在某人心中

### [典型例句]

The book impressed a lot of people.

这本书在很多人心中留下深刻印象。

I was deeply impressed by his speech.

他的演讲给我留下深刻印象。

My father impressed on me the value of hard work.

我父亲让我铭记勤劳的价值。

I impressed on him the importance of his work.=I impressed him with the importance of his work.

我向他强调了他的工作的重要性。

### 3. announce vt. 宣布, 宣告

#### [基本构词]

announcement n. 通告, 通知

announcer n. 播音员

#### [短语搭配]

make an announcement 通告, 通知

#### [词语辨析]

#### announce 和 declare 的用法比较

▲ announce 更接近于汉语“公布”、“告知”的意思, 它所涉及的是一件对方原来不知道的事, 后接名词或代词或 that 宾语从句, 如:

The accident was announced to his family by telephone.

已将事故用电话告诉了他的家属。

▲ declare 含有庄严宣告或交代清楚的意思, 它所涉及的事不一定是对方所不知道的, 除接名词、代词和 that 宾语从句以外, 还可接复合宾语等结构。如:

The accused declared himself to be innocent.

被告宣称自己无罪。

Soon Germany declared war on France.

不久德国对法宣战。

以上各句中的 announce 与 declare 不可互换。但有时两个词用在同一句中都说得通。  
如:

The committee announced/declared the results of the experiment.

委员会宣布了实验的结果。

简单地说, 同样表示“宣布”的意思, announce 用法较为普遍, declare 只用于正式场合。但有时会有大词小用的情况, 即英语里的夸张修辞, 这时用 declare 可代替 announce。

#### 4. therefore ad. 因此, 所以

##### [词语辨析]

##### therefore 和 so 的用法比较

▲therefore 在英语中比so更正式化, 多用于书面语, 是副词, 表示“因此, 所以”, 如:

He has never studied English before, and therefore we should give him more help.

他以前从来没有学过英语, 因此我们应该给他更多帮助。

▲so 是连词, 通常用于口语中比较随便的场合, 表示“因而, 所以”。如:

He has never studied English before, so we should give him more help.

他以前从来没有学过英语, 所以我们应该给他更多的帮助。

#### 5. force vt. 强迫, 迫使 n. 力量

##### [短语搭配]

force sb to do sth 强迫某人做某事

##### [典型例句]

The porter had to force the window open.

门房只好用力硬把窗户打开。

Don't force your child to play the piano if he doesn't want to.

如果你小孩不想弹钢琴就不要强迫她。

##### [词语辨析]

##### force, power, energy 和 strength 的用法比较

▲force 多指外力, 如武力, 暴力, 魄力, 势力, 用于复数表示军队。如:

The Qing Dynasty was finally overthrown by the people by force.

清朝政府最终被人们用武力推翻了。

Our forces have at last defeated the enemy.

我们的军队最终战胜了敌人。

▲power 多指势力、能力、本事; 也可指功率、动力、电力等。如:

The manager in the company has special power to deal with urgent affairs alone.

这家公司的经理有特权独自处理紧急事务。

Nowadays, any people in the world are opposed to the use of nuclear power.

如今，世界上许多人反对使用核能。

▲energy 主要指精力，能量，多指自然能量，如 natural gas, wind, solar 等。如：

After their holidays, these students are full of energy to deal with their studies.

放假回来后，学生们精力充沛地应对学习任务。

▲strength 主要指力量，强度，尤指身体、精神或道德上的坚强力量或活力，如反抗力、意志力、忍耐性等。如：

His granny was badly ill that she didn't even have the strength to stand up.

他的奶奶病得厉害，她连站起来的力气都没有。

### 三、【习题训练】

#### A 组

单项填空 从A、B、C、D四个选项中，选出可以填入空白处的最佳选项。

1. My money is beginning to \_\_\_\_ at the end of this month, so I have to ask my parents to give me more.  
A. give in                      B. give out                      C. give up                      D. give off
2. Does John know any other foreign language \_\_\_\_ French?  
A. except                      B. but                      C. besides                      D. beside
3. We were most impressed \_\_\_\_ her influent English.  
A. in                      B. on                      C. with                      D. upon
4. A robber with a mask over his face \_\_\_\_ her to hand over her necklace and money.  
A. let                      B. forced                      C. forbade                      D. made
5. I decided to put your name \_\_\_\_ for basketball club secretary.  
A. on                      B. in                      C. forward                      D. through
6. Pass the book \_\_\_\_\_ to me when you've finished with it.



A. out                      B. by                      C. on                      D. over

7. It is said that the fingerprints found on the floor will be used to \_\_\_\_\_ the murderer.

A. accuse                      B. blame                      C. scold                      D. show

8. Several new events \_\_\_\_\_ the programme in the 2008 Beijing Olympic Games.

A. added                                      B. were added  
C. added to                                      D. were added to

9. Practising Yoga \_\_\_\_\_ me to become confident and open-minded.

A. lets                      B. forces                      C. allows                      D. enables

10. — How did you find him out ?

—I \_\_\_\_\_ his name by chance on a list.

A. came down                      B. came about  
C. came up                      D. came across

### B 组

完成译文    根据中文原文完成下列各英文译文。（每空限填一个词）

1.有人指控这年轻人犯了谋杀罪。

The young man \_\_\_\_\_ murder.

2.每个人都应该通过自己的行为为下一代树立榜样。

Everybody should \_\_\_\_\_ an example to the next generation via his own behavior.

3.最后但同样重要的是我要感谢我的家人一直以来的支持和帮助。

Last \_\_\_\_\_ least, I want to thank my family for their support and help.

4.一到达山顶你就会体验到一种幸福感。

\_\_\_\_\_ the top of the mountain, a feeling of happiness will be experienced.

5.老师通过将学生置身于一场著名的战役使历史再现。

Teachers could \_\_\_\_\_ by placing students in a famous battle.

6.由于感到恐惧和寒冷，这位时空旅行者开始回到现在。

\_\_\_\_ \_\_ \_\_\_\_, the Time Traveller starts back towards the present.

### C 组

根据中文和首字母提示以及上下文完成句子。

1. Dickens created many wonderful c\_\_\_\_\_ in his novels.
2. Parents should allow children the space to v\_\_\_\_\_ their opinions, even if they are different from their own.
3. If you prepare yourself, you will be able to grasp every possible \_\_\_\_\_ (机会) for broader experience when it appears.
4. The comedian enjoyed great \_\_\_\_\_ (欢迎) during the 30's.
5. Thank you so much for your \_\_\_\_\_ (拯救) me from an embarrassing situation.

湖南省教育厅版权所有  
www.hunanedu.net  
免费赠送

## 一、【学习目标】

1. 学习与友谊有关的单词、词组与句型。
2. 运用所学词汇读懂与友谊有关的文章，并能就此发表个人观点。

### ★本单元重要词组：

get along well with sb 与某人友好相处	feel betrayed 感到背叛了
be/feel ashamed of 对.....感到惭愧	be proud of 以.....为自豪
feel like (doing) sth 想, 感觉像	admit doing sth 承认做了某事
keep one's word 信守诺言	in trouble 有麻烦, 处于困境
go straight to 直奔	as a result 结果
break one's word 食言	yell at sb 对着某人大叫
focus one's attention on 集中精力于	feel jealous of 嫉妒
can't stand (doing) sth 不能忍受某事	in public 当众, 在公众场合
apologize to sb for doing 向某人道歉	before long 不久
blame sb for sth 因为某事而责备某人	put off 耽搁, 推迟
can't help doing sth 禁不住做某事	make it 成功
feel guilty about 因为.....感到内疚	take care 保重, 小心
rather than 而不是	ever since 自从那以后
get through to 打通.....的电话	be absorbed in 全神贯注于
one another 互相	be consistent with 与.....一致
regardless of 不管, 不顾	speaking of 谈到; 说到
without hesitation 毫不犹豫地	in the world 到底, 究竟
would rather do sth than do sth 宁可.....而不.....	

can't wait to do sth 等不及去做某事

have/take different attitudes towards 对.....有不同的态度

be based on shared activities or interests 建立在共同的兴趣基础之上

discourage sb from doing st 阻止某人去做某事

## 二、【要点解读】

### 1. admit v. 承认, 准许 (入场, 入学, 入会)

#### [基本构词]

admission n. 准许

#### [短语搭配]

admit (to) (doing) sth 承认

admit sb to/into 允许某人进入(某一组织、机构、学校、团体等)

#### [典型例句]

No admission without tickets.

无票不准进入。

He admitted (to) the murder.

他供认了谋杀罪。

He admitted (to) having taken the money.

他承认拿了那笔钱。

How many students have been admitted into the school this year?

今年这所学校有多少学生入学?

#### [词语辨析]

**allow, permit, let 和 admit 的用法区别**

▲ **allow** 强调“默许”。用法: allow sb to do; allow doing

▲ **permit** 有时可与 **allow** 通用，不过它更强烈些，用法：permit sb doing ; permit sb to do , 可用于“明文规定允许或不允许”，如：The policemen permitted him to park here.

▲ **let** 与上面两个可以通用，不过更口语化，而且用法不同：let sb do

▲ **admit** 表示“允许进入，接受（入学，入会）等”。用法：admit sb to some place, 这里 to 是介词。另外，admit 还有“承认”的意思。

## **2. blame n.& v. 责备；责怪**

### **[短语搭配]**

blame sb for (doing) sth 责备某人做了某事

blame sth on sb= put/lay the blame on sb 把某事归咎于某人

be to blame (for) 应(为.....)承担责任; 该(为.....)受责备（不能用被动语态）

accept/bear/take the blame for sth 对某事负责任

### **[典型例句]**

Many children are afraid of being blamed for making mistakes in speaking English.

许多孩子害怕讲英语时犯错误而受责备。

The police blamed the traffic accident on Jack's careless driving.

警察把那起交通事故归咎于杰克的粗心驾驶。

The children were not to blame for the accident.

那次事故怪不着孩子们。

We were ready to take the blame for what had happened.

我们愿对所发生的事负责。

## **3. doubt n.& v. 怀疑，疑惑**

### **[基本构词]**

doubtful adj. 怀疑的

### **[短语搭配]**

in doubt 怀疑；拿不定主意

no/without/beyond doubt 无疑地；必定；当然

[典型例句]

**I don't doubt that** he can finish the task on time.

我相信他能按时完成任务。

**Do you doubt that** she will succeed?

你怀疑她会成功吗？

**He doubts if/whether** she will keep her word.

他不敢肯定她是否会遵守诺言。

There is no **doubt about/of** it.

此事无可怀疑。

**There is no doubt that** they will agree with you on this matter.

毫无疑问，他们在这件事上会同意你的意见的。

**4. persuade vt. 说服，劝说**

[基本构词]

persuasive adj. 有说服力的；令人信服的

persuasion n. 说服；信服；信念

[短语搭配]

persuade sb of sth 使某人相信某事

persuade sb to do sth = persuade sb into doing sth 说服某人做某事

persuade sb not to do sth = persuade sb out of doing sth 说服某人不要做某事

[典型例句]

I persuaded him of its truth.

我使他相信这是真的。

We will persuade him to take the medicine.

我们将说服他把药吃下去。

I persuaded my father not to smoke.=I persuaded my father out of smoking.

我劝服了我父亲戒烟。

## 5. absorb v. 吸收, 吸引

### [基本构词]

absorbed a. 全神贯注的, 一心一意的

### [短语搭配]

be absorbed in 全神贯注于, 专心于

### [典型例句]

His business absorbs him.

他的业务使他全神贯注。

The clever boy absorbed all the knowledge his teacher could give him.

那个聪明的男孩把他老师所能教他的所有的知识都吸收了。

He was too absorbed in the newspaper to hear the bell.

他专心读报, 连门铃也没听见。

Will was so absorbed in reading that he went without his dinner.

威尔非常专心读书, 以至于晚饭都没有吃。

## 6. hesitate vi. 犹豫, 迟疑

### [基本构词]

hesitation n. 犹豫

### [短语搭配]

hesitate about/ in/ at/ over doing sth

=hesitate to do something 做某事犹豫不决

have no hesitation in doing sth 毫不犹豫地做某事

without hesitation 毫不犹豫地, 立即

### [典型例句]

Don't hesitate about that. Do it at once.

对于那件事不要再犹豫了。马上去做吧。

Do not hesitate to give me a call if you need help.

如果你需要帮助就打电话给我，不要犹豫。

He asked her to sit beside him without hesitation.

他毫不犹豫地请她坐在他身旁。

Whenever I have difficulty in learning English, I have no hesitation in turning to Mr Ding's space for help.

每当我学英语有困难就马上向 Mr Ding 的空间求助。

### 三、【习题训练】

#### A 组

单项填空 从 A、B、C、D 四个选项中，选出可以填入空白处的最佳选项。

1. Jim was not \_\_\_\_\_ to the club, because at that time he was not a member of it.  
A. allowed                      B. permitted                      C. admitted                      D. let
2. Alice trusts you; only you can \_\_\_\_\_ her to give up the foolish idea.  
A. suggest                      B. attract                      C. absorb                      D. persuade
3. I don't think it is teachers who \_\_\_\_\_ for giving students too much pressure.  
A. are to blame                      B. are going to blame  
C. are to be blamed                      D. should blame
4. Paul strongly denied that he was guilty \_\_\_\_\_ cheating innocent customers.  
A. against                      B. about                      C. of                      D. for
5. You must apologize \_\_\_\_\_ her \_\_\_\_\_ what you have done.  
A. /; for                      B. for; to                      C. to; /                      D. to; for
6. The number of deaths from heart disease will be reduced greatly if people \_\_\_\_\_ to eat more fruit and vegetables.  
A. will be persuaded                      B. will persuade  
C. persuade                      D. are persuaded
7. It was \_\_\_\_\_ of you not to give others a ride in your new car.



A. jealous                      B. unfair                      C. greedy                      D. mean

8. \_\_\_\_\_ is no doubt that the Rockets will defeat the Washington Wizards in the next game.

A. It                      B. As                      C. That                      D. There

9. The bad weather discouraged us \_\_\_\_\_ on the picnic and we had to stay at home.

A. from going                      B. to go                      C. go                      D. in going

10. He is suffering from a heart disease, and I am afraid his weak heart cannot \_\_\_\_\_ any bad news like this.

A. stand                      B. hold                      C. carry                      D. support

### B 组

完成译文    根据中文原文完成下列各英文译文。（每空限填一个词）

1. 每当我处于困境时，我的朋友们总是毫不犹豫地来帮助我。

Whenever I am in trouble, my friends always come to help me \_\_\_\_\_.

2. 这个学生究竟做了什么事使得你那么生气？

What \_\_\_\_\_ has this student done to make you so angry?

3. 尽管我们失败过,但我们仍然要坚持下去。

We will hold on \_\_\_\_\_ the fact that we once failed.

4. 他看报纸很投入,没有注意到有什么人进入教室。

He was so \_\_\_\_\_ a newspaper that he didn't notice anyone enter the classroom.

5. 有时候在与人相处时，我们需要有人指点。

Sometimes we need help \_\_\_\_\_ others.

6. 因为她不信守诺言，我们从此情断义绝。

We weren't going to be friends any more because she couldn't \_\_\_\_\_.

7. 他说我不应该朝他高声嚷叫。

He said that I shouldn't \_\_\_\_\_ him.

8. 他为输掉了这场比赛而深感内疚。

He \_\_\_\_\_ losing the game.

### C 组

in public, be determined to, feel like, would rather, be proud of, get through, be ashamed of, can't help, persuade, (be) trapped in, (be) consistent with

选择括号中所给单词的适当形式填空

1. I'm not myself today and I don't \_\_\_\_\_ eating anything.
2. I don't think you should point out your friend's mistake \_\_\_\_\_. You can talk with him in privacy.
3. There may be a lot of difficulties ahead of us, but we \_\_\_\_\_ overcome them one by one.
4. Upon hearing the exciting news, every one of us \_\_\_\_\_ crying with joy.
5. After the earthquake, he tried to call his parents for many times, but he couldn't \_\_\_\_\_.
6. His glorious past record is certainly something to \_\_\_\_\_.
7. The brave firefighters were determined to spare no efforts to save all the people \_\_\_\_\_ the burning building.
8. He is always getting round. What he said is not \_\_\_\_\_ the fact.
9. Nothing can \_\_\_\_\_ her to change her mind once it is made up.
10. I \_\_\_\_\_ stay at home surfing the Internet than sit in the teahouse doing nothing.

## 一、【学习目标】

1. 学习与环境保护有关的单词、词组与句型。
2. 运用所学词汇能阅读与环境保护有关的文章，并能进行讨论，书写相关报告。

### ★本单元重要词组：

open the floor 自由发言	in addition 另外
grow to 增长到	wipe out 扫除，消灭
cut back on 削减，减少	be concerned about/ for 担心
be concerned with 与.....有关	be responsible for 对.....负责
see/ sb as 把某人看作是	the key to success 成功的关键
run out 用完	do harm to 对.....有危害
run across 偶然遇到	be covered with 被覆盖
draw conclusions 得出结论	be stocked with 装备有，储备有
pick out 找出，挑选	in the form of 以.....形式
on account of 由于	rely on 依靠
be under way 在进行中	natural reserve 自然保护区
work out solutions to 想出解决办法	replace...with... 用.....代替.....
prohibit sb from doing sth 禁止某人做某事	remain to be done 有待做
appreciate doing 欣赏做某事	home of/ to .....的故乡，.....的发源地
lead to=result in 导致	a diverse range of 多种多样的
have a lasting effect on/upon 对.....持久影响	
take steps to do sth 采取措施做某事	

## 二、【要点解读】

**1.debate n.辩论, 辩论会 v. 辩论, 争论, 讨论**

### [短语搭配]

beyond debate 无可辩论

open a debate 展开辩论

hold a debate 举行辩论会

a heated debate 激烈的辩论

### [词语辨析]

**debate, argue, discuss 和 quarrel 的用法比较**

▲**debate**: 正式的辩论, 通常在一位仲裁人的主持下, 按照一定的规则进行, 双方各自申诉理由, “交锋”意味较强。 如:

The subject is being hotly debated.

▲**argue**: 指说理、论证, 侧重于摆事实, 试图说服对方, 也可能是激烈的交换意见, 以致争吵。 如:

I argued with him for a long time, but he refused to listen to any reason.

▲**discuss**: 重在交换意见, 进行讨论, 不含有意说服对方的成分。 如:

I'll discuss the problem with him later.

▲**quarrel**: 吵架, 争吵。因生气失态以至于会伤害到对方。 如:

The couple was quarreling furiously about whose turn it was to cook the dinner.

**2. concern vt. 关系到; 影响; 使担心; 使关心; 使烦恼**

**n. 有关...的事(可数); 关怀, 关心(不可数); 焦急, 忧虑(不可数)**

### [基本构词]

concerned adj. 担心的; 烦恼的; 忧虑的; 有关的, 涉及的(置于名词之后)

concerning prep. 关于

### [短语搭配]

concern oneself with / in / about sth 关心某事; 忙于某事

so/as far as...be concerned 就.....来说/而论

be concerned with/in 与.....有关

be concerned about 担心, 操心

have no concern with 与.....无关

show concern for sb 关心某人

### [典型例句]

There's no need to concern yourself with this matter.

你不用管这事。

It is reported that the pop singer is concerned with selling drugs.

据报道那个流行歌手涉嫌贩毒。

She is concerned about her son's future.

他很担心她儿子的前途。

Some people don't show much concern for our environment.

有些人不太关心我们的环境。

So far as I am concerned, the second arrangement is more suitable.

就我来说, 第二种安排更合适。

For more information concerning the club, contact me, please.

如果你想了解关于俱乐部的更多消息, 请与我联系。

### 3. raise vt. 使升高; 饲养

### [词语辨析]

#### raise 和 rise 的用法比较

▲rise 为不及物动词, 过去式为 rose, 过去分词为 risen, 表示主语自身移向较高的位置。  
用法如下:

1) 从地平线上升起

The sun was rising slowly when we got to the top of the mountain.

我们到达山顶时，太阳正冉冉升起。

## 2) 起立

He rose to welcome me.

他起身欢迎我。

## 3) 起床

The next morning I was the first to rise.

第二天早上，我是第一个起床的。

## 4) 上升；上涨

The river has risen two feet.

河水涨高了两英尺。

Prices have risen surprisingly.

价格涨得惊人。

▲raise 为及物动词，过去式和过去分词均为 raised，表示主语发出的动作作用于其他事物。用法如下：

## 1) 举起，抬起

He is a player of raising a weight.

他是名举重运动员。

## 2) 增加某物之数量、容量

Prices have been raised up.

价格被提高了。

Mr Smith raised his voice so that everyone in the room can hear him.

史密斯先生提高了声音以便屋里的人都能听见。

## 3) 提高（某事物的水平）

We must do everything we can to raise the farmer's living standards.

我们必须尽一切所能来提高农民的生活水平。

#### 4) 养育

The poor peasant had to work hard to raise his family.

那可怜的农民得辛苦干活来养家。

**4.remain v. 余下，留下；停留，保持；仍是**

#### [基本构词]

remains n. 剩余物；遗址；遗体

remaining adj. 剩下的；余下的（做前置定语）

remainder n. 剩余物；余数；廉价出售的书籍

#### [典型例句]

The doctor suggested he (should) remain in bed for a few days.

医生建议他卧床几天。

A great many things remain to be done (= have not yet been done).

许多事情仍需要去完成。

He remained silent.

他保持沉默。

It remains a secret.

这仍然是个秘密。

After the flood, nothing remained of the village.

洪灾之后这个村庄没剩下什么了。

#### [词语辨析]

#### remaining 和 left 的用法比较

▲remaining 是形容词，表示“剩下的；余下的”，做前置定语，如：

He used up the remaining twenty dollars.

▲left 是过去分词，意义同上，但做后置定语，如：

He used up the twenty dollars left.

**5.closely ad. 仔细地，认真地；密切地；接近地；严密地**

## [词语辨析]

### close 和 closely 的用法比较

▲close adj. 仔细的；密切的；严密的；近的；接近的

adv. 紧紧地，接近

v. 关闭；封闭；封锁

close 作为形容词，副词，表示空间，时间上密切接近，后接 to 才能接宾语。close 作定语，表示一种具有抽象意义的“紧密的，密切的”。表示“关闭的”用 closed, 不用 close。如：

He is my close friend.

他是我亲密的朋友。

You have to give close attention to the matter.

你得密切地关注这件事。

Most of the shops are closed at 9:30 in the evening.

多数商店在晚上 9:30 关门。

▲closely ad. 认真地；密切地

The students are listening to the lecture closely.

学生们在仔细地听讲座。

The public follow the process of the election closely.

公众密切注意着大选的进行。

有些形容词的副词有两种形式，一个与形容词同形，一个加上 -ly 结尾，但含义改变：

free 免费地——freely 自由地，无拘束地

hard 努力地——hardly 几乎不

late 晚，迟——lately 近来

most 极，非常——mostly 主要地

wide 广阔地——widely 广泛地

high 高——highly 高度地，非常地

deep 深，迟——deeply （抽象意义）深深地

loud 大声地——loudly 大声地（含有喧闹的意思）

near 邻近——nearly 几乎



### 三、【习题训练】

#### A 组

单项填空 从 A、B、C、D 四个选项中，选出可以填入空白处的最佳选项。

1. It is a good plan in theory, but it remains \_\_\_\_\_ whether it works in practice.  
A. to see                      B. to be seen                      C. seeing                      D. seen
2. As far as I am \_\_\_\_\_, teaching children is something worthwhile.  
A. concern                      B. concerns                      C. concerning                      D. concerned
3. The conference has been held to discuss the effects of tourism \_\_\_\_\_ the wildlife in the area.  
A. in                      B. on                      C. at                      D. with
4. ——Can you help me with the maths homework, mom?  
——You can't always \_\_\_\_\_ other's help for your homework. Do it by yourself this time.  
A. wait on                      B. rely on                      C. insist on                      D. turn on
5. We'd better have some water in store before we \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. have run out of it                      B. have run out it  
C. have run it out                      D. have run it out of
6. This picture was taken a long time ago. I wonder if you can \_\_\_\_\_ my father.  
A. find out                      B. pick out                      C. look out                      D. speak out
7. I really appreciate \_\_\_\_\_ to relax with you on this nice island.  
A. to have had time                      B. having time  
C. to have time                      D. to having time
8. They really had a great time too, designing everything, drawing the blueprints(蓝本), \_\_\_\_\_ the angles(角度) and so on.  
A. looking out                      B. taking out                      C. finding out                      D. figuring out
9. As it was snowing hard outside, we were sitting \_\_\_\_\_ to the stove inside the room, not willing to go out.  
A. close                      B. closely                      C. closed                      D. closing

10. He \_\_\_\_ his voice in order to be heard by all the people around the square.

A. lifted

B. held

C. rose

D. raised

### B 组

完成译文 根据中文原文完成下列各英文译文。(每空限填一个词)

1. 如果你十天内没来付账,我们将会中断你的天然气的供应。

If this bill is not paid within ten days, your natural gas supply will \_\_\_\_\_.

2. 总统开始发言,回答记者们的问题。

The president \_\_\_\_\_ and answered the journalists' questions.

3. 还有两个保护河流的政府特别项目正在实施之中。

Two special government projects are also \_\_\_\_\_ to protect the river.

4. 我得走了。我受不了在这不做一点有益义的事情。

I have to leave now; I \_\_\_\_\_ nothing meaningful here.

5. 这栋新建的楼房是那栋旧楼房的三倍高。

The newly-built building is three times \_\_\_\_\_ the old one.

6. 由于这些新的产品销售不好,董事会决定降低生产。

As these new products are not selling well, the board have decided to \_\_\_\_\_ production.

7. 这种做法对存活下来供我们食用的鱼类的数量将产生持久的影响。

This will have \_\_\_\_\_ upon the number of fish left for us to eat.

8. 令我惊讶的是,那女孩笑起来和她母亲像她那么大时一模一样。

To my surprise, the young girl laughs \_\_\_\_\_ her mother did at that age.

### C 组

be stocked with, cut down on, take the floor, be willing to, grow to, result in,  
prohibit ...from, a diverse range of, wipe out, show concern about, see... as  
see... as, be willing to,

选择括号中所给单词的适当形式填空

1. The public are \_\_\_\_\_ growing \_\_\_\_\_ the safety of milk sold in supermarkets.
2. The Yangtze River is home to \_\_\_\_\_ fish and animals.
3. Please don't speak at one time. George may \_\_\_\_\_ after the two women each say a few words.
4. After his first novel was published, he was \_\_\_\_\_ one of the most outstanding new authors of his generation.
5. His carelessness \_\_\_\_\_ his failure in the driving test.
6. There are still many people suffering a lot, and we are to do something to \_\_\_\_\_ poverty.
7. The one bedroom apartment \_\_\_\_\_ its own bathroom and Internet access.
8. He is not a bit mean; instead he \_\_\_\_\_ always \_\_\_\_\_ help anyone in trouble.
9. Passengers \_\_\_\_\_ using such electronic devices as mobile phones during take-off and landing.
10. The workers are going all out to make the output \_\_\_\_\_ three times what it was five years ago.

## 一、【学习目标】

1. 学习和人类与自然有关的单词、词组与句型。
2. 运用所学词汇读懂关于人类与自然方面的文章，并能就此发表个人观点。

### ★本单元重要词组:

on (the) one hand...on the other hand...	一方面.....另一方面
with the intention of	为了，以.....为目的
point out	指出
interfere in/ with	干涉
in general	一般说来,大体上
on one's (the) way to doing sth	即将成为.....
show respect for	对.....表示尊重
be desperate for sth/to do sth	非常渴望
of one's own	某人自己的
be related to	与.....有关联
push ahead with	推进，推行
succeed in doing sth	成功地做某事
end up	以.....而告终
use up	用完
comment on	评论
in complete agreement with	完全赞同
after all	毕竟，终究，别忘了
come across (偶尔)	碰到，发现
make sense	有意义，讲得通
in praise of	赞扬（某人）
for sale	待售，出售的
put.....in place	准备就绪，布置妥当
turn out	结果是
figure out	想出，理解，算出
the other day	几天前
on one's part	对某人而言
advocate + n./v-ing	提倡，倡导
in favour of	赞同，支持
point of view	观点
follow in one's footsteps	追寻某人的足迹
meet one's needs	满足某人的要求

## 二、【要点解读】

### 1. normal n.& a. 正常的（状态）

#### [词语辨析]

**normal, common, ordinary 和 general 的用法比较**

▲normal 指“正常的”、“正规的”、“常态的”。

#### [常见词组]

a normal child 智力正常的儿童

above /below normal 标准以上/下

return to normal 恢复正常

the normal temperature of the human body 人的正常体温

#### [典型例句]

The normal price of a ticket is \$230!

一张票的正常价格是 230 英镑。

Her temperature is above normal.

她的体温高于正常体温。

The damage was heavy; it was difficult to return to normal in a short time.

损坏很严重，短期内很难恢复正常。

▲common 强调“常见的，不足为奇的；共同的，公共的，公有的；普通的”。

#### [常见词组]

common interests 共同利益

the common people 老百姓

common knowledge 常识

in common with 和.....一样

in common 共同，共有，共用

**[典型例句]**

It's a common bag, and you can find it in every store .

这包很普通，哪个商店都有卖的。

Snow is common in cold countries.

在寒冷的国家雪是常见的。

In common with many people, he prefers classical music to pop.

和许多人一样，他喜欢古典音乐，而不喜欢流行音乐。

Real friends should have everything in common.

真正的好朋友什么东西都应该共同享有。

▲ordinary （与众多同类的东西相比）强调“平常的”、“平淡无奇的”。

**[常见词组]**

ordinary dress 平常服装

ordinary force 【军】 常规部队

out of the ordinary 不平常的，非凡的； 例外的

**[典型例句]**

The novel describes the way of life of the ordinary people there.

这部小说描写那里的普通人的生活方式。

▲general 意为“普遍的”，“一般的”，“普通的；概括的，全面的，大体的，大致的”。

**[常见词组]**

the general opinion 一般的舆论

in general= generally 一般地；大体上；通常；多半；一般而言

**[典型例句]**

Give me a general idea of the work.

告诉我这件工作的概括情况。

I like games in general, and especially football.

各种运动我一般都喜欢，尤其是足球。

I am glad to find myself in general accord with your opinions.

我很高兴地发现我的意见与你的看法基本一致。

People in general like her.

大家一般都喜欢她。

## **2. adopt vt. 收养，领养；采用，采纳（议案、意见等）**

### **[基本构词]**

adopter n. 养父母

adoptee n. 被收养者

### **[短语搭配]**

adopt measures/new methods/an idea 采取措施/采用新办法/采纳意见

an adopted son 养子

adopted words 外来词

### **[典型例句]**

Mr. King adopted the orphan as his own son.

金先生将那孤儿收养为自己的儿子。

We are willing to adopt your plan.

我们愿意采用你的计划。

### **[词语辨析]**

#### **adopt 和 adapt 的用法比较**

▲adopt 收养，领养；采用，采纳（议案、意见等）

▲adapt（使）适合，（使）适应

### **[常用词组]**

adapt...to... 使.....适应

adapt...for... 改编

She had to adapt herself to local conditions.

她必须使自己适应当地的情况。

This English novel was adapted for the stage.

这部小说被改编成了剧本。

**3. benefit v. (常与 from, by 连用) 获益; 得益于 n. 利益; 好处**

**[基本构词]**

beneficial adj. 有益的

**[短语搭配]**

benefit sb/sth 对某人或某物有益

benefit by/from 受益于

be of benefit=be beneficial 有意义

for the benefit of sb = for one's benefit 为了某人的利益

**[典型例句]**

What he said benefited all the students.

他说的话使所有的学生受了益。

Will the AIDS patients benefit from/by the new drug?

这种药对艾滋病人有效吗?

It is said Yoga is of great benefit to human health.

据说瑜伽对人体健康有极大好处。

He devoted his whole life to doing the research for the benefit of mankind.

为了造福人类他一生都在进行研究。

**4. involve v. 包含; 使陷入, 使卷入, 牵涉**

**[基本构词]**

involvement n. 卷入

**[短语搭配]**

be involved in 包含在.....; 与.....有关; 被卷入; 专心地(做)

be/get involved with 纠缠; 涉及

become/get involved in 卷入, 陷入



**[典型例句]**

What does the job of editing involve?

编辑工作包含些什么？

Winning the game involves both skill and fortune.

要赢得比赛，既要技巧也要运气。

I was involved in the quarrel between Tom and Jack.

我卷入到汤姆与杰克的争吵中。

He's smart enough to know that if he gets involved with that crowd, he's out to lunch.

他够聪明的，知道自己要是和那帮人搅和在一起，就会落伍的。

**5. majority n. 多数, 大半**

**[短语搭配]**

in the majority 拥有多数的；占多数的

a majority of 许多的，大量的

the majority of 大多数的

**[典型例句]**

At the meeting, young people were in the majority.

在会上年轻人占大多数。

The majority of doctors believe smoking is harmful to health.

大多数医生认为，吸烟有害健康。

The majority of his books are kept upstairs.

他的大部分书收藏在楼上。

The majority were/was against the plan.

多数人不赞成这个计划。

注：majority 与 of 连用，主要指人，谓语动词用复数。单独使用时，后面的谓语动词用单数或复数均可。

**6. seek n. 找寻 v. 寻找, 搜索; 追求, 寻求**

### [短语搭配]

seek advice/happiness/wealth/help/friendship...寻求忠告/幸福/财富/帮助/友谊等

seek to do sth= try to do sth 企图做某事...

seek after/ for 寻找, 追求

seek out 找出, 寻找

seek through 搜查遍(某处)

### [典型例句]

You should seek advice from your lawyer on this matter.

这件事情你应该请教你的律师。

It was no use seeking to persuade him to give up smoking.

试图说服他戒烟是没有用。

Something suspicious was found after the room was sought through.

房间被彻底搜查后,发现了一点可疑的东西。

He sought vainly for the answer.

他寻求答案,但无结果。

We sought her out to tell her of her success.

我们找到她,告诉她她成功了。

## 三、【习题训练】

### A 组

单项填空 从 A、B、C、D 四个选项中, 选出可以填入空白处的最佳选项。

1. He has decided to go abroad to study with the \_\_\_\_ of improving his English and finding a better job when he returns.

A. interview      B. intention      C. application      D. consideration

2. Jim was very happy yesterday because he \_\_\_\_\_ the book that he wanted.

- A. came to            B. came across            C. came about            D. came out
3. The couple are unable to have children of their own, but hope to \_\_\_\_\_ one.
- A. adapt            B. receive            C. adopt            D. keep
4. Many children think they are \_\_\_\_\_ with when their parents are trying to show concern about them.
- A. interfered            B. separated            C. disturbed            D. offended
5. In the questionnaire, the subjects are questioned whether they \_\_\_\_\_ banning cars in the city center.
- A. agree            B. comment            C. advocate            D. conduct
6. When the headmaster spoke out his plan, the \_\_\_\_\_ of the students in the class \_\_\_\_\_ against it.
- A. majority; were            B. most; were            C. most; did            D. majority; did
7. All the candidates were \_\_\_\_\_ the street to be named after a great man \_\_\_\_\_ his great contributions to the city.
- A. in favor of; in need of            C. in praise of; in favor of
- C. in praise of; in need of            C. in favor of; in honor of
8. The baby reached out his hands ,crying in \_\_\_\_\_ want of his mother.
- A. curious            B. desperate            C. sincere            D. serious
9. It was more than he could bear when his old friend \_\_\_\_\_ him to accept a cigarette.
- A. invited            B. urged            C. persuaded            D. agreed
10. \_\_\_\_\_ today, he would arrive in New York by Tuesday.
- A. If he leaves            B. Would he leave
- C. Was he leaving            D. Were he to leave

### B 组

完成译文 根据中文原文完成下列各英文译文。（每空限填一个词）

1. 赞扬他们成就的话很多。

Much was said \_\_\_\_\_ their achievements.

2. 我急需见经理向他解释所发生的一切。

I \_\_\_\_\_ see the manager and explain to him what has happened.

3. 要是你卷入这场争吵的话，你会吃苦头的。

If you \_\_\_\_\_ the controversy, you may burn your fingers.

4. 这个城里的大部分人想在这个地区发展新兴工业。

\_\_\_\_\_ people in the town want to encourage new industry in the area.

5. 许多代表主张修建一座新的大桥。

Many representatives \_\_\_\_\_ a new bridge.

6. 这样一个不得人心的政策很难推行下去的。

It is hard to \_\_\_\_\_ such an unpopular policy.

7. 作者在论文中阐述了艺术和文化的联系。

In his essay, the author writes about how art \_\_\_\_\_ culture.

8. 现将那块地按该价出售，任何人都可购买。

The land is now \_\_\_\_\_ at that price to anyone.

### C 组

选择括号中所给单词的适当形式填空

the other day, mention, end up, deliver, be in agreement with, follow in the footsteps of, put sth. in place, interfere with, meet the needs, figure out

1. Hearing that his baby son had been \_\_\_\_\_ that morning, he was wild with joy.
2. We will buy more computers \_\_\_\_\_ of the students.
3. Anxiety can \_\_\_\_\_ children's performances at school.
4. The little boy can't \_\_\_\_\_ how the magician turned a flower into a bird.
5. Before the examination, please \_\_\_\_\_ everything for it \_\_\_\_\_.
6. I think the scientific advances \_\_\_\_\_ in your article are interesting.

7. If you continue to steal, you'll \_\_\_\_\_ lifting a stone only to have it drop on your own foot.
8. He has hopes of \_\_\_\_\_ Yang Liwei and becoming an astronaut.
9. At the meeting, everyone \_\_\_\_\_ what he said.
10. I happened to be out on business when he came to my company\_\_\_\_\_.

湖南省教育厅版权所有  
免费赠送  
www.hunanedu.net

## 语法部分

### (一) 句子

---

#### 一、【学习目标】

1. 掌握描述时间、地点和方位的常用表达方式;
2. 理解并掌握比较人、物体及事物的常用表达方式;
3. 使用适当的语言形式进行描述事物。简单地表达观点、态度或情感等;
4. 掌握语篇中基本的衔接和连贯手段, 并根据特定目的有效地组织信息。

#### 二、【要点解读】

1. 句子的概念: 句子用来陈述要素完整的事实, 如: We are happy. Lee is learning English. 也可提出一个问题, 如: Are you happy? Is he learning English? Which university does he go to? 也可以提出请求或发出命令, 如: Let's do it! Be nice to your brother. 还可以表示惊叹情绪, 如: How well they can dance! What an academic girl she is!
2. 句子成分: 一般情况下, 句子分为主语部分和谓语部分, 若细分, 还有宾语、宾语补足语、定语、表语、状语、同位语等。
  - 1) 主语部分: 主语是执行句子的行为或动作的主体。通常位于句首, 特殊情况下可不位于句首。
  - 2) 谓语部分: 就是一个句子中说明主语干什么、是什么或怎么样的部分, 通常位于主语后面, 特殊情况下可以放在主语前面。如:

One of the most well-known and well-loved types of comedy (主语部分) is called stand-up. (谓语部分: 主语是什么)

To find a best friend (主语部分) is difficult. (谓语部分: 主语怎么样)

That he had struggled for a whole life for freedom (主语部分) touched us. (谓语部分: 主语干什么)

Here comes (谓语部分: 主语干什么)the bus. (主语部分)

3) 宾语: 表示动作行为的对象的成分。下列句中的划线部分为该句中的宾语:

People have always enjoyed laughing. (enjoyed 的宾语)

(注意: 介词后面的一个人或事物也叫介词的宾语, 见词类介绍部分的介词部分。)

4) 定语: 在一个人或事物的前面或后面限定此人或物的身份或数量或者描绘该人或物的性质特征状态的成分。下列结构中的划线部分为定语:

One of the most well-known and well-loved types of comedy is called stand-up. (one 的定语)

The man who has been walking up and down the street is thought of as being dangerous. (the man 的定语)

5) 状语

状语分两类:

(1) 表示一个动作行为的各种特征的成分, 如动作行为发生的频度、程度、时间、地点、原因、目的、结果、方式、条件、伴随状况等。下列句中的划线部分为修饰动作行为的状语:

We have been best friends since primary school. (have been 的时间状语)

We spent some days with each other during the winter vacation in the fine arts museum. (依次是 spent 的方式、时间和地点状语)

She visited the office twice every day to check that the job was done properly. (依次是 visited 的频度和目的状语)

For some unknown reasons she wouldn't participate in the discussion. (wouldn't participate 的原因状语)

She was so hard-working that she won the first place. (was so hard-working 的结果状语)

If you were my family, I would have told you about that without hesitation. (依次是 would have told 的条件和方式状语)

Holding the handle in his hand, the old man stood on the bus. (stood 的伴随状语)

She hurt my leg terribly. (hurt 的程度状语)

(2) 表示一个性质状态的程度或何方面的性质状态, 称为程度状语和方面状语。如:

This is highly dangerous. (dangerous 的程度状语)

America is both economically and politically powerful. (都是 powerful 的方面状语)

She dressed her little daughter very beautifully. (beautifully 的程度状语)

6) 表语: 跟在表示“成为, 变得, (似乎/仍旧/证明/结果)是, 闻起来/听起来/看起来/摸起来/尝起来/感觉起来”等含义的动词(这种动词叫连系动词)后面表示主语的职业身份或性质状态或具体内容的成分。下列句中的划线部分为该句的表语:

She is a teacher. (主语的职业)

She turns out to know quite much about the book. (主语的状态)

7) 宾语补足语: 跟在宾语的后面, 补充说明宾语的职业身份、性质状态或动作行为的成分。下列句中的划线部分为该句的宾补:

The coach will make you the most popular ever football star. (make 的宾语 you 的补足语)

Don't leave the water running. (leave 的宾语 the water 的补足语)

The commander ordered me to send the message to the soldiers. (ordered 的宾语 me 的补足语)

We noticed the bird hurt in the leg. (noticed 的宾语 the bird 的补足语)

We need to keep the forces ready for war. (keep 的宾语 the forces 的补足语)

8) 同位语: 是跟在一个人或事物后面的名词性质的结构, 表示此人/事物的名称或具体身份或具体内容。同位语与和它同位的名词指称的是同一人/事物/行为。下列句中的划线部分为同位语:

Beijing, the capital of China, lies in the North of the country. (Beijing 的同位语)

I can't stand the fact that everybody now knows my shameful past. (the fact 的同位语从句)

### 3. 练习

指出下列划线部分属于何种句子成分:

1) Advertisements are an important part of our lives.

2) These ads deal with large social issues.

3) Not all ads play tricks on us.

4) With piles of papers to mark, the teacher would have no time to have any fun.

5) Remind the students of the history and significance of the Olympic Games.

6) He was the highest scorer for the gold-medal-winning USA basketball team.

7) He was the highest scorer.



- 8) She proves the best teacher of this school.
- 9) The whole of China must have felt proud of their athletes' successes in the 29th Olympics.
- 10) Women put make-ups to make themselves look beautiful.
- 11) The boy watched the Germans' cars roaring past him.
- 12) My father always leaves the windows open while sleeping.
- 13) We are so used to them that we are often unaware of them.
- 14) An advertisement uses persuasive language and exciting images to encourage people to buy a product or service or believe in an idea.
- 15) English, the world's most widely spoken language, posed a great difficulty for the first Chinese overseas students sent to America.

湖南省教育厅版权所有  
www.hunanedu.net  
免费赠送

## (二) 英文词类

英文主要有七大词类：名词，代词，限定词，形容词，副词，动词，连词。每个单词在一个具体语境中必定属于一种词类，但很多单词在不同语境中词类发生变化。

### 1. 名词：

1) 概念和功能：表示人或事物的名称的词。

2) 分类：名词根据意义可以分为两大类：专有名词和普通名词。

专有名词是专指特定的某人某事物的名称的名词，如：Tom, President Hu, Beijing 等。

普通名词是通指人或事物的名词，又可分为四小类：

(1) 个体名词，指以一个一个的可分辨的个体为单位存在的人或事物，如：aunt, apartment 等。个体名词有单数和复数形式。

(2) 集体名词，指由个体组成的集体，如：team, committee, family, class, group, audience, company, government, army 等。集体名词若看成一个整体是单数概念，若看成一个一个的个体，则是复数概念。如：

The government are meeting to discuss my plan this afternoon. 政府官员们今天下午准备开会讨论我的计划。The government has got a big plan for rebuilding the villages. 政府有一个重建这些村子的庞大计划。

(3) 物质名词，指某种物质材料，因为没有固定的形状和体积而无法分辨为一个一个的个体，所以一般是不可数名词。如：beer, cheese, cloth 等。

注意：有些物质名词有时候可以转化成可数名词，如在酒吧里可以说：three beers = three glasses of beer 和 two black coffees = two cups of black coffee。另外，有些物质名词表示种类/某物发生的场或次时可数，如：It was a special tea. = It was a special kind of tea. Silver and gold are two metals. = ...two kinds of metal.

Heavy snows and rains hit northern Xinjiang. 新疆北部遭遇数场暴雨和暴雪。

还有的物质名词用于复数形式有特殊意义，如：international/deep waters 公海/深水区（此处的 waters 指水域，而非水这种物质）

(4) 抽象名词，指抽象的动作行为(并非一次具体的动作行为，否则为个体名词；多数和一个动词同源)或抽象的品质/性质/状态(并非具有这种品质/性质/状态的人或事物，否则为个体名词；多数与一个形容词同源)。因为是抽象意义，所以它们不可数。如：

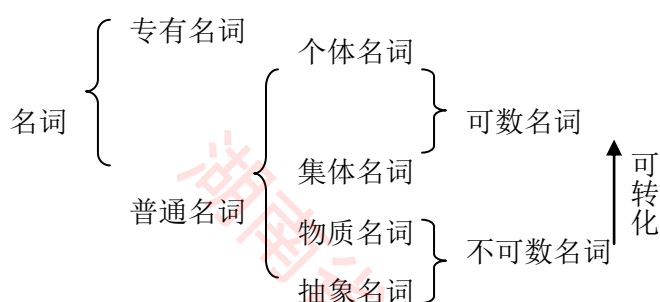
absence, access, success 等。

注意：表示抽象品质/状态/性质的抽象名词如果转而表示具有这种品质/状态/性质的人或事物的名词就可数了。如：

Failure is the mother of success. 失败是成功之母。(failure 和 success 指“失败和成功的抽象状态”)

He is a great success as a film director. 作为电影导演他是个成功者。(success 指示“成功的人”)

名词的分类可概括为：



## 2. 代词：

1) 概念和功能：代词是指代名词（短语）的词。

2) 分类：根据意义，代词可以分为以下几类：

### (1) 人称代词

① 主格人称代词有：I, you(你), he, she, it, we, you(你们), they, who。它们在句中作主语。其中 it 用法较为丰富：代替 this 或 that；指代上文提到的事物或动物或不知性别或身份的人或天气、距离、或客观情况等

② 宾格人称代词有：me, you, him, her, it, us, you, them, whom。它们在句中做宾语。

(2) 自身代词有：oneself, myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, ourselves, yourselves, themselves。一般在句中作宾语和同位语。如：

Help yourself with the food.(help 的宾语)

The President himself will come and visit the soldiers. (The President 的同位语)

(3) 指示代词有：this, that, these, those, which, what。可在句子中作主语、宾语、表语。如：

What are you talking about? I don't know that.

#### (4) 名词性物主代词:

mine, yours, hers, his, its, ours, yours, theirs, whose。指代形容词性物主代词 my, your, her, his, its, our, your, their, whose+名词, 所以后面不再跟名词, 一般作主语、宾语和表语。

(注意: 所谓形容词性物主“代词” my, your, her, his, its, our, your, their, whose 因为不是指代名词, 而是放在名词前起限定名词身份作用, 所以把它们列为限定词。见下一讲。)

(5) 相互代词: each other, one another, 意思是“互相, 彼此”。前者指“两者互相”, 后者指“两者或两者以上之间互相”。可作动词宾语和介词宾语。如: We have known each other for years.

(6) 不定代词: 所谓不定, 是指所指代的人或物的身份不确切具体。有很多也可作不定限定词。可分为两类:

① 由-body, -one, -thing 构成的复合不定代词, 它们不能再作不定限定词用:

somebody=someone, anybody=anyone, everybody=everyone, nobody=no one, none, something, anything, everything, nothing。它们都是单数意义。

② 既可以作不定代词(起指代名词作用, 所以后面不再跟名词), 又可以作不定限定词(起限定名词作用, 所以后面还要跟名词)的词:

all=all+复数名词, another=another+单数名词, any=any+单数或复数或不可数名词, both=both+复数名词, each=each+单数名词, either=each+单数名词, (a)few=(a)few+复数名词, (a)little=(a) little+不可数名词, many=many+复数名词, much=much+不可数名词, neither=neither+单数名词, the other=the other+单数名词, (the)others=(the) other+复数名词, some=some+复数名词或不可数名词。

(7) 连接代词和关系代词: who(ever), whom(ever), whose, which(ever), what(ever)可以引导名词性从句, 并起指代一个名词(短语)作用; 代词 that, which, who, whom 还可以引导起定语从句, 并指代一个名词(短语)或代词。这些代词都引导从句, 也就是起着连接主句和从句的作用。前一类可称为连接代词, 后一类称为关系代词。在从句章节具体讲解。

### 3. 限定词:

1) 概念和功能: 限定词是指对名词起着特指、泛指以及表示数量等限定作用的词类。一个名词在具体语境中一定有至少一种以上意义, 而不是单纯的词汇意义, 如 person 在词典中是“人”的意思, 但在短语或句子中一定会有“一个或多个人”或“泛指的人或特定的一个人”的含义, 指这种意义的词类就叫做“限定词”, 所以在短语或句子中一个名词前面必定要有至少一个限定词。

2) 分类: 限定词分为以下几类:

(1) 表示泛指含义的限定词有: 不定冠词 a/an (+单数可数名词), 定冠词 the(+单数可数名词), 零限定词(即不用任何限定词)(+不可数名词/复数可数名词)

(2) 表示特指含义的限定词有: the (+可数或不可数名词), 指示代词 this / that / which / what(+单数可数名词), 指示限定词 these / those / which / what (+复数可数名词), 形容词性物主限定词和名词所有格 my/your/his.../Tom's / his mother's.../ whose (+可数或不可数名词)和序数词(the) first / (the) last...

(3) 表示不定指含义的限定词有: no, some(两个含义: 表示“一些”时后跟复数或不可数名词; 表示“某一”时等于 a certain, 后跟单数名词), any, each, every, either, neither, all, both, other, another。

(4) 表示数目的限定词, 包括基数词 one / two...; 倍数词 twice / three times...和分数 half / one third...

(5) 表示量的限定词: several, many, much, enough, (a) few, (a) little, a lot of, lots of, plenty of, a great / good deal of, a large of, a small amount of, a quantity of, a great of, a number of 等。

由上可见,除了复数名词和不可数名词表示泛指时前面不用任何限定词(但也可叫零限定词)外,所有其它情况下一个名词前都要有至少一个限定词;中国学生最典型的错误是:在单数可数名词前用零限定词表示泛指。如: Dog is human being's best friend (×)。正确的说法是: A / The dog is a human being's best friend. 或者 Dogs are human beings' best friends.

#### 4. 形容词:

1) 概念: 修饰或描绘某人或物, 表示其性质特征状态的词类。如:

a brief report(定语, 修饰 report)    the central government(定语, 修饰 government)

I'm hardly functional today.(表语, 描绘主语 I)。

2) 形容词的等级性: 很多形容词都有原级、比较级和最高级三种形式。

(1) 原级就是词典中的词条形式

(2) 比较级表示“更.....”的意义, 最高级表示“最.....”的意义。(构成规则略)

#### 5. 副词:

1) 概念和功能: 修饰动词, 表示动作行为的频率、程度、方式、时间、地点、结果等的词类; 或者修饰形容词和副词, 表示一种性质状态的程度或方面。很多副词以形容词+ly 结尾。

2) 分类: 根据概念, 副词可以分为:

(1) 频度副词, 包括 often, usually, always, all the time, rarely, seldom, once, twice 等。如:

He often interviews important people.(修饰动词 interviews)

(2) 程度副词, 包括 very(修饰形容词或副词), very much(修饰动词), extremely, terribly, highly, how, however, so, greatly 等。如: She feels terribly sorry.(修饰形容词 sorry)

(3) 方式副词，多数以-ly 结尾。如：The guy intentionally stood in my way.(修饰动词 stood)

(4) 时间副词，包括 instantly, at once, immediately, soon, then, shortly 等。如：

The caller rang off instantly. (修饰动词 rang off)

(5) 地点或方位或趋向副词，包括 here, there, where, out, in, away 等。如：Walk out.(修饰动词 walk)

(6) 结果副词，如：

Michael was absent and thus criticized by the head teacher.(修饰动词 criticized)

(7) 方面副词，如：

It's socially inappropriate to ask how much an American earns.(修饰形容词 inappropriate)

(8) 状态副词，如：

The light was on for the whole night.(做表语，表示主语的状态)

3) 副词的等级性：很多副词也有等级性，意义以及构成方式和形容词相似。不过，副词作状语时的最高级前可以不要 the。

5. 动词：

1) 概念和功能：表示动作行为或状态的词类。

2) 分类：

(1) 从其含义来分，动词可分为实义动词、连系动词、情态助动词和基本助动词。

① 实义动词：表示实在的动作行为含义的动词。如：go, play, jump, agree, think, have

② 连系动词：表示“成为/变得，保持/持续，证明/结果是，闻起来/听起来/看起来/摸起来/尝起来/感觉起来”等含义的动词。后面要跟上表语表示主语的职业身份或性质状态。连系动词大致有：

“变成/变得”意义类：become, get, turn, come, go, grow, make

“是”意义类：be, turn out(结果/原来是), prove(证明是)

“保持/持续状态”意义类：remain, stay, keep, continue

“感官”意义类：smell, sound, feel(人感觉起来，事物让人感觉起来，人或事物摸起来), taste, look

“表象”意义类：appear, seem

③ 情态助动词，如：can must

④ 时态助动词，如：do / did / does / have / has / had / will / be (无词义，用于帮助构成某些时态及疑问句和否定形式或被动语态)

(2) 根据动词本身能不能接宾语，动词分为及物动词和不及物动词。

① 不及物动词：

不及物动词本身意义完整，后面不需要接宾语。不及物动词没有被动语态。如：

The rain stopped.                      What happened yesterday?

② 及物动词：

后面必须接宾语表示其动作对象的动词叫做及物动词。及物动词能变为被动语态。有的及物动词只能接单宾语，有的接一个表人的再接一个表物的宾语(双宾语)，有的宾语后接一个宾语的补足语(复合宾语)。

接单宾语

He's reading a magazine.

接双宾语

Mr Zhang gave us some books.

接宾语+宾语补足语

We often make him a fool.

(3) 根据动作是否有时值，实义动词还可分为延续性动词和瞬间动词。

① 持续性动词：

表示一种持续的动作或状态，是段概念。

这类动词有： learn, work, stand, think, sleep, live, walk, have, wait

② 瞬间动词：

这类动词表示的动作不能延续，表示一个结果含义，是点概念。

这类动词有： close, die, arrive, post, come, fall, leave, go, break, lose

(4) 动态动词和状态动词

① 动态动词是表示运动状态的动词，如： borrow, buy, drink, eat, read, change, arrive, leave, hit, jump

② 状态动词是表示相对静止状态意义的动词，如： be, have(有), belong to, concern(与...有关), involve(涉及), suit, lack, matter, think(认为) , love, believe



## 6. 介词:

1) 概念和功能: 介词后面跟上宾语(一个名词短语或类似名词短语的结构或-ing 分词短语), 表示宾语和其它词的关系。

### 2) 分类:

根据功能来看, 可分为以下几种:

#### (1) 表示时间的介词:

① 接时间点: at 9 o'clock; before Sunday

② 接某天(的朝夕): on Dec. 9<sup>th</sup>, on a winter evening

③ 接一段时间: in 1967(在此期间); during his lifetime(在此期间或贯穿该段)

#### (2) 表示地点的介词:

① 接某地为点概念: at the airport; to Beijing

② 接某地为线: up the mountain, across the river

③ 接某地为面概念: across / throughout the country

④ 接某地为立体空间概念: in / inside / into / out of / outside the house

(3) 表示工具或媒介的介词: by the means of a bus

(4) 表示抽象方式的介词: by train / satellite(只接零限定词+单数名词或不可数名词)

(5) 表示内容的介词: talk about / of sb / sth; (fight / quarrel / argue) over the money left by their father(接分歧或冲突内容)

(6) 表示原因的介词: for no reason; because of the rain; due to her illness; as a result of careless driving

(7) 表伴随(原因/条件): with pure luck / so much work to do

(8) 表示其它含义的介词:

①排除含义 except / but / apart from Tom; except for too small a nose ②包括含义 including the food; in addition to / besides / as well as / apart from the lack of food ③根据含义 according to his information ④取代/否定含义 in stead of crying; in place of me ⑤代表含义 on behalf of the employees ⑥对立/支持类含义 against the plan; in favor of / for my suggestions ⑥不管/尽管含义 regardless of the severe weather; in spite of / despite the hardships ⑦数字/地位/权力/威力超越/胜过某人某物含义 over fifty, (our victory) over the



French team, have power over everything in the world, (a regional manager) over me ⑧职业身份含义 as a child / a postman ⑨相似含义 like his father ⑩例举 like / such as teaching

## 7. 连词:

1) 概念和功能: 连词连接两个相邻的词或短语也可在一个大句子内连接两个相邻的句子。

### 2) 分类:

(1) 连接词、短语的连词有: or, and, but, not only...but also..., either...or..., neither...nor..., both...and...等。如: (Either) Tom or you have to be sent for a doctor. The product is cheap but of bad quality.

(2) 连接句子的连词有: or, and, but, so, because, so that, that, when, where, who, whose, how, whether, if 等。如: You have to stay with me, or you will be taken away by those guys.

(在复杂句章节具体讲解)

## 8. 练习

1) 指出下列句子中的划线词的词性:

(1) They established the organization twenty years ago.

(2) The police closely watched the thieves in every supermarket.

(3) Environmental problems are everywhere around us, but nobody is showing any concern.

2) 选择正确的词性填入空中, 补全句子:

(1) The \_\_\_\_\_ (economy, economic, economically) is improving very \_\_\_\_\_ (quick, quickly, quickness).

(2) The boy soon went to sleep \_\_\_\_\_ (because of, because) \_\_\_\_\_ (tired, tiredness, tire).

(3) The girl used to be very \_\_\_\_\_ (active, activity, actively).

(4) We are working on the network \_\_\_\_\_ (currently, current, currency).

(5) \_\_\_\_\_ (Appear, Appearance, Apparent) often seems very \_\_\_\_\_ (different, difference, differently) from \_\_\_\_\_ (real, realize, reality).

(6) He has \_\_\_\_\_ (actual, act, actually, action) promised me the job.

(7) He would take two \_\_\_\_\_ (walks, walkings) every day.

(8) \_\_\_\_\_ (Healthy, Health, Heal) is of more \_\_\_\_\_ (valuable, value) than money.

(9) They feel listening the most \_\_\_\_\_ (difficult, difficulty) part of learning a foreign language.

(10) Their dream finally came \_\_\_\_\_(true, truly, truth).

湖南省教育厅版权所有  
免费赠送  
www.hunanedu.net

### (三) 短语

短语就是以某一个词为中心，再加上一些必要的附加成分和并非必要的修饰成分组成的一组词。以何种词类为中心，就叫做何种短语。短语内部的附加成分或修饰成分可以是单个的词，也可以是一个短语。通常来说，单个的词作修饰成分放在中心词的前面，而短语作修饰成分应该放在中心词的后面。

因为在实际应用中单词总是在短语中出现，所以英语学习者应该多积累记诵短语。

#### 1. 名词短语：

1) 概念和功能：以名词为中心的一组词叫名词短语，一般作句子的主语部分、宾语、表语、定语、宾语补足语或同位语。其修饰成分叫定语。必要的附加成分为限定词。可见名词短语中形容词定语不一定要有，但限定词一定要有。

2) 构成模式：**限定词**(+单词定语)+**名词中心词**(+短语定语或定语从句)。如下列句中划线部分为名词短语：

(1) Advertisements (try to make people buy a product or believe in an idea.) 名短作句子主语部分，构成模式为：零限定词+名词中心词

(2) (We like) public advertisements. 名短作宾语：零限定词+单个形容词定语+名词中心词。

(3) (My favorite) is the strawberry-flavored ice-creams sold in this shop. 名短作表语：定冠词限定词+单个形容词定语+名词中心词+动词短语定语

(4) (What are you going to do with them,) the children in the room, who feel very bored? 名短作 them 的同位语：定冠词限定词+名词中心词+介词短语定语+定语从句

(5) Vegetable gardens are in my charge. 单个名词 vegetable 作 gardens 的定语

(6) (We considered him) a person suitable to be the group leader. 名短作宾语补足语：不定冠词限定词+名词中心词+形容词短语定语

#### 2. 形容词短语：

1) 概念和功能：以形容词为中心构成的一组词叫形容词短语。其修饰成分为状语。没有必要的附加成分。一般充当句子的表语、定语、宾语补足语。

2) 构成模式：(单词状语+)**形容词中心词**(+短语状语)，如下列句中划线部分为形容词短语：

(1) (Who in this class is) best at maths? 形短在句中作表语：形容词中心词+介词短语状语

(2) (I am) sorry to hear that. 形短在句中作表语：形容词中心词+非谓语动词短语原因状语

(3) (China is one of the few) politically stable (countries in Asia). 形短作 countries 的定语：方面副词状语+形容词中心词

(4) (She made the kids) so relaxed when learning English. 形短作句子的宾语补足语：程度副词状语+形容词中心词+非谓语动词短语时间状语

### 3. 副词短语：

1) 概念和功能：以副词为中心构成的一组词叫副词短语。其修饰成分为状语。没有必要的附加成分。一般充当句子的状语，少数可充当表语或定语或宾语补足语。

2) 构成模式：（单词状语）+副词中心词+（短语状语）。如下列句中划线部分为副词短语：

(1) (They sing) very beautifully. 副短作 sing 的方式状语：程度副词状语+副词中心词

(2) (They laughed) rather wildly. 副短作 laughed 的状语：程度副词状语+副词中心词

(3) (The fire) is already out. 副短在句中作表语：时间副词状语+副词中心词

(4) (The lights) still on work very well. 副短作 the lights 的定语：时间副词状语+副词中心词

(5) Keep your feet apart. 副短做宾语补足语，没有任何修饰成分

### 4. 动词短语：

1) 概念和功能：以实义动词或连系动词为中心构成的一组词。可在句中充当谓语部分(谓语动词短语)或非谓语成分(-ing/不定式/-ed 动词短语，作主语部分、宾语、表语、定语、状语或宾语补足语)。其修饰成分为状语，但动词短语中的状语位置比较灵活，无论单词状语还是短语或状语从句放在动词中心词前后皆可；必要附加成分根据动词种类不同分别有：单宾语、表语、双宾语(人宾+物宾)、复合宾语(宾语+宾语补足语)。

#### 2) 构成模式：

(1) (单词状语)+及物动词+单宾语（+短语状语）

(We will) update the packaging of the product. 动短作句中的谓语部分

(2) (单词状语)+及物动词+双宾语（+短语状语）

(My parents promised) to give me a car for my good grades. 动短作 promised 的宾语

(3) (单词状语)+及物动词+宾语+宾语补足语（+短语状语）

(It's unlikely) to make her monitor this time. 动短作(真实)主语

(The man) teaching us to drive (works for the city government). 动短作 the man 的定语

(4) (单词状语)+不及物动词（+短语状语）

( His wish was) to have a car and a house. 动短作表语

Having worked for hours on the problem, (the technicians finally found out a solution).动短作 found out 的时间状语

(5) (单词状语)+系动词+表语 (+短语状语)

(This make-up makes her) look very old. 动短作宾语补足语

## 5. 介宾短语:

1) 概念和功能: 由介词加上名词短语或代词或数词构成的一组词叫介词短语。介词后面的名词短语或代词也称为介词的宾语。少数副词可添在介宾短语前作修饰性的状语。介词和宾语都是必要成分。介宾短语功能类似于形容词和副词短语, 可作表语、定语、状语和宾语补足语。

2) 构成模式: (副词状语)+介词+名词短语宾语或代词宾语或数词宾语。如:

The river beyond the mountain provides a good place for us to enjoy ourselves. 介宾短语作 the river 的定语

## 6. 中文短语英译的语序确定方法

1) 根据中文短语确定短语中心词, 如“一本刚出版的关于地心的一个惊人秘密的小说”, 其中心词是“小说”, 译为英文是“novel”。该短语为名词短语。

2) 梳理该短语中心词的修饰成分和必要附加成分, 分别译成英文。如以上短语的修饰成分分别为“一本”, 译为必要附加成分限定词“a”; “刚(被)出版的”, 译为形容词短语“newly-published”; “关于地心的一个惊人的秘密的”, 译为介宾短语“about an amazing secret about the center of the earth”。

3) 根据英文名词短语语序理论, 短语修饰成分在中心词后, 单个修饰或限定成分在前, 对应英译短语应该是“a newly-published novel about an amazing secret about the center of the earth”。

## 7. 练习

1) 指出划线的短语结构是哪种短语和作何种句子成分。

(1) To add to the virtual world of Realcine, smells are given out through small openings in the headsets.

(2) In scientific studies it has been shown that VR can provide teenagers with another way to experience the world and make them work harder to make their dreams come true.

(3) The girl has been very busy training for her next competition.

(4) The exact origin of table tennis is not known to the sports world.

(5). Many players believe table tennis is not only a physical game but a psychological game as well.

2) 将下列中文短语翻译成英文。

(1) 在世界上已经消失了

(2) 晚上出来捕食

(3) 非常擅长和人打交道

(4) 三个毫无经验的困在深山中的年轻人

湖南省教育厅版权所有  
免费赠送  
www.hunanedu.net

## (四) 简单句

1. 简单句的概念和功能：如果一个句子只有一个主语部分和一个谓语部分，或合称为一个主谓结构，这样的句子就叫简单句。可见一个简单句只能有一个谓语动词，如果还需要用动词，就只能用非谓语动词(不定式、-ing 分词和-ed 分词)作其它成分(主、宾、表、定、状和宾补)。一个简单句可以是省略形式，但是总可以还原成主语部分+谓语部分的完整形式。

一个大句子中要是含有几个主谓结构(即几个分句)，就叫复杂句。

简单句根据功能分为陈述句、疑问句、祈使句和感叹句。

2. 简单句陈述句的构成：主语部分+谓语部分

主语部分由名词短语(或相当于名词短语的结构，如数词和代词)或动词的不定式或-ing 分词充当。

谓语部分由动词短语充当。

3. 简单句的类型（实际上就是动词短语的类型）

(1) 主语部分+及物动词+单宾语（+状语）

We will soon update the packaging of the product.

(2) 主语部分+及物动词+双宾语（+状语）

My parents give me a car for my good grades.

(3) 主语部分+及物动词+宾语+宾补（+状语）

The soldiers left us working for them until midnight.

(4) 主语部分+不及物动词（+状语）

The family camped on the stream in the valley.

(5) 主语部分+系动词+表语（+状语）

Leaves turn green in spring.

4. 简单句疑问句和否定句的构成：

1) 一般疑问句：助动词+主语+主动词短语？

2) 特殊疑问句：疑问代词/副词/限定词+助动词+主语+主动词短语？

但陈述句谓语部分结构为“连系动词 be+表语”的疑问句结构成为：（疑问代词/副词/限定词）+ be+主语+表语？ Why did you go? Did you go to meet your friend?

Where were you yesterday?

3) 否定句：主语+助动词+not+主动词短语。如使用 never, seldom, rarely 等副词否定，则不需特别添加助动词构成否定，就是：主语+never / seldom...+主动词短语就是。但是倒装情况下需要有助动词帮助构成。

He doesn't come here often. He never comes here. Rarely has he come here.

5. 简单句祈使句的构成：

1) 肯定形式：谓语动词(原形)短语。

Come here. Please wait for me at the gate.

2) 否定形式：Don't+谓语动词(原形)短语。

Don't go. Please don't stand up.

6. 简单句感叹句的构成：

1) 强调谓语部分的名词的感叹句：

(1) What + a / an + 单数名词(+主语部分+剩下谓语部分)!

What a nice view (from the window you can get)!

(2) What + 复数名词/不可数名词(+主语部分+剩下谓语部分)!

What beautiful girls (they are talking to)! 括起来的部分可以省掉。

2) 强调等级表语形容词原级以及等级状语副词原级的感叹句：How + 形容词/副词原级(+主语部分+谓语部分)!

How delicious (the foods taste)! How fast (they are running)! 括起来的部分可以省掉。

7. 练习：

1) 更正下列错误简单句，更正后仍保持简单句型：

(1) Ride a bicycle is hard for the disabled boy.

(2) They came to Beijing surprised me.

(3) Patient is very important for a teacher.

(4) Careless cost her her life.



- (5) Every people is here waiting for you.
- (6) Start his own tea business is his dream.
- (7) The flowers very beautiful.
- (8) People having wished to fly like birds.
- (9) The low number of attacks happen in this area of water proves my theory.
- (10) How easy problems they are!

2) 用简单句型翻译下列中文句子:

- (1) 几百年前当地人说另外一种语言。(主语+及物动词+单宾)
- (2) 我想你参加我的生日聚会。(主语+及物动词+宾语+宾语补足语)
- (3) 他们仍旧对我们很友好。(主语+连系动词+表语)
- (4) 店主给我们出了一个更低的价格。(主语+及物动词+双宾语)
- (5) 消息传到了镇上。(主语+不及物动词)

## (五) 谓语动词语态和时态

谓语动词的时态和语态以及人称和数是谓语动词的三大特征。动词语态分为主动和被动两种。

### 1. 主动语态的形式和意义：

主动语态句子结构是：施动者作主语+谓语动词 **do**，表示“某人某物做……”。

2. 被动语态句子结构是：受动者作主语+谓语动词 **be done**，表示“某人某物被……”。不及物动词是没有被动语态的。被动语态中的 **be** 在不同时态中形式不同。

### 2. 陈述语气的谓语动词时态的形式和意义：

#### 1) 一般现在时态

##### (1) 形式：

##### ① 主动：

肯定：动词原形或动词原形+s/es；**be** (三单 **is**，一单 **am**，其余人称和数 **are**)+表语。

否定和疑问式：用助动词 **do**(第三人称单数为 **does**) 或连系动词 **be** 帮助构成。

We live here. Do you live here? We don't live here. Where is she? Is she in? She isn't in.

##### ② 被动：is / am / are+动词-ed 分词。

##### (2) 意义：

①表示不受时间限制的永恒客观存在或客观规律。

Nothing travels faster than light. Knowledge derives from practice.

②包括当前的一定时间段内比较稳定的状态或习惯。常与 **every day**, **always** 等频度状语连用。

John always wakes up at six. Father doesn't smoke as much as before.

③表示说话时的状态，一般用于状态动词(不能用现在进行时态)。

It concerns everybody. 它关系到所有人。 She loves this music.

④表示将来时间：

A. 按时间表将要发生的动作或事态(不强调是主语的意图，指照时间计划执行)。

The train leaves for Shanghai at ten p.m. tonight.(火车时刻表规定)这趟火车今晚十点开往上海。

We start next week.(时间计划安排好了)我们下周动身。

B. 用在时间、条件等状语从句中表示将来。如：

We will go and help to get in the crops when the harvest time **comes**.

If it **is** fine tomorrow, we will have the football match.

2) 现在进行时态：

(1) 形式：

① 主动：肯定 is / am / are +doing; 否定疑问略。

② 被动：肯定 is / am / are +being +done; 否定疑问略。

(2) 意义：

① 表示说话时正在进行的动作。可用时间状语 now, at the moment 等。

What are you doing? I'm writing a letter.

② 表示现阶段正进行而说话时刻不一定进行的动作。

He is teaching physics this term.

③ 表示按计划、安排很快就会发生的动作，通常要与将来时间状语连用，以示和正在发生的动作的区别。如：He is washing the dishes later. = He is going to wash...

但：We are going/coming to Shanghai tomorrow.不能说 We're going to go / come to Shanghai...

④ 含有感情色彩的叙述一个经常发生的行为，常和 continually, constantly, forever, always 等状语连用。

John **is always asking** me some stupid questions.(恼火) 而 John always **asks** me some stupid questions.(客观事实)

3) 现在完成时态：

(1) 形式：

① 主动：肯定式：have / has(三单) + done

② 被动：肯定式：have/ has been +done

(2) 意义：

现在完成时态是和现在有关的时态。

① 已完成用法：表示发生在过去的动作行为对现在造成的影响或结果。这种用法多用于瞬间性动词。它不关注此动作过去发生的细节（时间、地点、方式、环境等），关注的是现在的情况，因此不能与和具体过去时间短语(yesterday, last week, ...ago, then, at that moment, in the past 等)连用，但可以和以下时间状语连用：

A. 模糊的过去时间，它们和现在结果有关。如：just(刚刚已经), already, yet , recently 和 lately。

Have you eaten yet? (= Are you hungry?)

He's just turned off the light.(= The light is off now.)

B. 表示现在或说话时还未结束的时段，如：now, this morning / afternoon..., tonight, today, since+过去时点, so far 等。(但如果 this mornig / afternoon / evening 说话时已经过去，就不能用现在完成时，而要用一般过去时。)

Has he come this morning? 到现在为止的早晨这段时间他来了没有？

I've had many falls since I began to ride a bike.(现在结果：我还在骑车。到现在已经摔过很多次了。)

② 未完成用法：过去某时开始一直延续到现在的动作/状态，可能还要延续，也可能刚刚结束。注意点：

A. 要用延续性动词，但否定可以用瞬间性动词。

B. 要用表示延续到现在的时间段状语，如：for+时段(有时不表示延续到现在的时段，则不能用现在完成时)，since+过去时点，so far, until / till now, up to now, during / for / in / over + the past / last / recent +时段。如：

Where have you been? I have waited here since 8 a.m. (wait 动作刚刚结束。)

Look at the busy cleaners! They've worked in the wind for quite a few hours.(work 动作还要延续)

I've taught English in this school for / during / in / over the past / last / recent 10 years.

4) 现在完成进行时态：

(1) 形式：主动 have / has been doing。无被动。

(2) 意义：过去某时开始一直延续到现在的动作/状态，可能还要延续，也可能刚刚结束。意义和现在完成时态的未完成用法相似，但可不和延续到现在的时段短语连用。注意点：

① 很多延续性动词用于现完和现在完成进行时态含义一样，都表示不停的持续到现在(一种“实线式”延续)，如 expect, hope, learn, lie, live, look, rain, sleep, sit, snow, stand, stay, study, teach, wait, want, work 等。但延续动词中的状态动词不能用于进行和完成

进行时态，如 be, have (拥有), own, belong to, know, understand, believe, love, like, concern(关系到)等，所以这些动词只能用于现在完成时表示持续到现在。

I've had this for years. 不能说 I've been having this for years.

She's always believed in God. 不能说 She's always been believing in God.

I've been waiting (since 9 a.m.) = I've waited since...

② 瞬间性动词用于现在完成进行时表示“虚线式”延续含义，即一次一次的反复发生到现在。而它们用于现在完成时则表示过去的一次性动作对现在造成的影响或者到现在做了多少次或好多量了。

He's been jumping onto and off the table (for half a hour). 他跳上桌子又跳下来，这样一直跳(了半小时了)。但：He's jumped onto the table (many times). 他已经跳上了桌子(现在的结果是：他在桌子上)。/ 他已经跳上桌子很多次了。

③ 还有些动词在现在完成时中是瞬间含义，在现在完成进行时中是延续含义，如：do, read, write, paint, build 等。

She's been painting the wall. 她一直刷墙来着。She's painted the wall. 她已经刷了那面墙。

5) 一般过去时态：

(1) 形式：

① 主动：肯定式使用动词的一般过去式构成。否定和疑问用助动词 did 或连系动词 was(一三单)/ were 帮助构成。

② 被动：was / were done。

(2) 意义：过去发生过的行为或存在过的状态，只关注过去，不暗示现在还是否有此行为或状态。大多表示此行为或状态已不再存在。可以和具体过去时点或不延续到现在的时段连用，如 yesterday, last week, ...ago, then, at that moment, in the past, for+时段, that night / morning..., those days / years..., this morning/morning(表示已经过去的时段时)等。如：

① A: Have you eaten yet? B: Yes, I have. I **ate** an hour ago.

② I **lived** in Guangzhou for five years. 我在广州住过五年。现在住哪里不知道。

I have lived / been living in Guangzhou for five years. 我在广州住了五年了。现在还住在广州(或就要搬了)。

6) 过去进行时态：

(1) 主动形式和现在进行时态类似，只是 be 的形式为 was / were。被动为 was / were being done。

(2) 意义：和现在进行时完全对应，只是往过去推一步。

7) 过去完成时态：

(1) 主动形式为 **had done**；被动形式为 **had been done**

(2) 意义：和现在完成时态类似，只是往过去推一步。

使用过去完成时的关键是：要有一个更晚的时间点(一个时间状语或一个过去时动作)和那个过去完成时态动作或状态对比存在。

① 已完成用法：过去 A 点之前就已经发生的行为 B，对 A 点造成影响或结果。行为 B 就用过去完成时态。多用瞬间性动词。

They **had finished** the job when I **got** there. We **had had** lunch by **twelve o'clock yesterday**. 但是相继发生的过去动作表示承接关系的连词连接，都用一般过去时。

She **went** to the baby and **undressed** him. She **went** to the baby, **undressed** him and **put** him in bed.

另外，表示两个几乎同时发生的瞬间动作的分句用表示“一...就...”的连词 **when/ the moment(minute) / as soon as** 连接起来，两个动作也都用一般过去时。

When he **opened** the door, the bird **flew out**. 他开门的时候，鸟飞了出去。

如果要强调两个动作之间的时间差，先发生的就用过去完成时。如：

When he **had opened** the door, the bird **flew out**. 他把门打开之后，鸟飞了出去。这里的 **when = after**。

② 未完成用法：一个动作行为 B 在过去 A 点之前就开始一直持续到 A 点，还要继续持续或刚刚结束。行为 B 就用过去完成时态。要用持续性动词，并且和表示持续到过去某点的时段状语连用，如：**by+过去时点, since+过去时点; (un)til then, up to then, for+时段等**。如：**By six o'clock they had worked for five hours. They had known each other for eight years when they got married.**

8) 过去完成进行时态：类似于现在完成进行时态，只是往过去推一步。

9) 将来表达法：

(1) 形式：主动 1) **will do** 2) **is / am / are going to do** 3) **is / am / are doing** 4) **will be doing** 5) **is / am / are to do** 6) **is / am / are (just) about to do** 7) **do / does**

(2) 意义：

① **will do**

will 可以作情态助动词表示坚决的意志、意愿等，也可以作时态助动词表示未来会发生的事情。这里讨论的是后者。前者会在情态助动词章节处理。

A. 表示说话时才做出的临时决定，多用于对别人的话或周围环境做出的反应。

Tom: The phone is ringing. Lucy: I'll go and answer it.

B. 表示说话人根据自己的主观经验或知识对将来的客观事情的预测。

Take this medicine and you will get better soon.

## ② is / am / are going to do

A. 表示说话之前经过考虑的意图，如：从下面语境看得出，明显说话前就已经做了准备。

I've bought some bricks. I'm going to build a house.

B. 表示说话时已有迹象表明某客观事情会很快发生。如：Noticing the photocopy(复印) machine working very slowly, John knows that it's going to take a long time to photocopy all the documents.

## ③ is / am / are doing

表示按计划，安排很近的将来会发生某事。如：I am meeting Tom tonight. He's taking me to the theatre. 今晚我要见 Tom。他要带我去看戏。(和 Tom 已经安排约好见面和他带我去看戏。)

## ④ will be doing

A. 在将来某一时点或某一时段会正在发生的事情，即所谓将来进行时。

What will you be doing at 8 a.m. tomorrow morning?

B. 纯粹客观的谈将来会发生的事情。不含主语的意图。如：

I'll be seeing Tom tomorrow. 明天我会见到 Tom。(意指“我们会参加同一个会议或我们在一个办公室上班，所以会发生明天我见到 Tom 的客观事情。)

Tom won't be cutting grass (because he is ill or he has another job to do). Tom 不会割草(不是不愿意而是他生病了或者他有另外的工作要做)。

## ⑤ is / am / are to do

A. 传达第三方的命令或指示(主语的责任或义务)。如：No one is to leave the room without the permission of the police.

B. 计划安排。如：They are to get married next week. 预定他们下周结婚。

## ⑥ is / am / are (just) about to do = is / am / are on the point of sth / doing sth

表示即刻就要发生的事情。I am about to leave.我马上就要动身了。

⑦ do / does

一般现在时表将来已经在前面谈过。

9) 将来完成时态

A. 形式：主动 will have done; 被动 will have been done。

B. 意义：

将来某一点会已经发生的动作行为或会已经延续多久。如：We will have worked for ten hours when she comes back.

10) 过去将来表达法：

(1) 形式：1) would do 2) was / were going to do 3) was / were doing 4) would be doing 5) was / were to do 6) was / were (just) about to do 7) did

(2) 意义：和 7 种将来表达法对应的过去形式。只是：were / was to do 还可以表示“过去没想到会发生的事情”，所谓“过去命中注定的事”。如：

The two young men joined in the cycling race, who were to be killed in a road accident. ....没想到竟然出了交通事故丢了命。

I lost my wallet, not knowing it was never to be found again.....以后再也没找到了。

3. 练习

选择正确答案完成句子：

(1) As she \_\_\_\_\_ the newspaper, Granny \_\_\_\_\_ asleep.

A. read; was falling

B. was reading; fell

C. was reading; was falling

D. read; fell

(2) —Did you tell Julia about the result?

—Oh, no, I forgot. I \_\_\_\_\_ her now.

A. will be calling B. will call

C. call

D. am to call

(3) They \_\_\_\_\_ a good swim last Saturday.

A. had

B. are having

C. have had

D. have had

(4) When he was at school, he \_\_\_\_\_ to the library every day.



A. goes                      B. was going              C. has gone              D. went

(5) Until then, his family \_\_\_\_\_ from him for four months.

A. haven't heard                      B. hasn't been hearing  
C. hadn't heard                      D. hasn't heard

(6) When he \_\_\_\_\_ back this afternoon, I will tell you about it.

A. is coming              B. comes              C. will come              D. came

(7) He \_\_\_\_\_ the army for two years. Now he is a governmental employee.

A. has joined              B. had joined              C. has been in              D. was in

(8) The company \_\_\_\_\_ this kind of fridges for many years because they sell well.

A. is producing                      B. has been producing  
C. was producing                      D. produces

(9) The policeman's attention was suddenly caught by a small box which \_\_\_\_\_ placed under the Minister's car.

A. has been              B. was being              C. had been              D. would be

(10) — Have you decided already?

—Yes, I \_\_\_\_\_ at once.

A. have decided      B. decided              C. will decide      D. had decided

(11) Glad to see you back. How long \_\_\_\_\_ in Russia?

A. did you stay                      B. have you stayed  
C. were you staying                      D. have you been staying

(12) By the end of next year, another new gymnasium \_\_\_\_\_ in Beijing.

A. will have been completed              B. was being completed  
C. has been complete                      D. would have been completed

(13) An exhibition of paintings \_\_\_\_\_ at the museum next week.

A. are to be held      B. is to be held              C. are holding      D. will hold

(14) Every possible means \_\_\_\_\_, but none \_\_\_\_\_ successful.

A. has tried; has proved

B. tried; proves

C. has been tried; proves

D. is being tried; is proved

(15) The question he asked is hard \_\_\_\_\_ .

A. for answer

B. to answer

C. to be answered

D. answering

湖南省教育厅版权所有  
免费赠送  
www.hunanedu.net

## (六) 情态助动词

1. 概念和功能: 表示说话人对所说话语的情感态度或看法, 或表示主观设想或其它情态意义。

2. 句法特征:

主动式为情态助动词+do(对现在或将来事情的情态) / be doing(对说话时的事情的情态) / have done (对过去或现在完成的事情的情态)/ have been doing(对过去正在发生或一直发生到现在的事情的情态); 被动为情态助动词+be done / have been done(情态助动词+be doing / have been doing 没有被动形式)

3. 意义:

情态动词是英语语法中的难点, 可用于表示以下意义: 能力、责任与义务、推测、允许、请求、建议、劝告、胆量、邀请、虚拟语气等。

1) 能力

(1) 表示潜在能力时, can 和 be able to 意义接近, 基本可以互换。如: I can / am able to do it on my own. 但是, 由于 be able to 中 be 形式多样, 所以可用于各种时态和其它情况下, 如:

I'm sorry I haven't been able to play tennis with you recently. 而 can 只有 could 一个过去时态变化形式。

(2) were / was able to 的肯定形式也可以表示过去实现了的具体能力, 此时不能用 could 替代, 而相当于 managed to do。

I was able to recognize the man as my uncle. 我当时认出了那个男的是我叔叔(而不是“我有能力认出来”)。

Although the pilot was badly hurt, he was able to explain what had happened. 尽管这个飞行员当时受了重伤, 他还是将事情的经过解释清楚了(而不是“他有能力解释清楚”)。

2) 责任与义务

① 表示责任与义务的情态动词按照责任与义务程度由低到高排列为: should / ought to (应该), have to / need (有必要), must (必须, 一定要)。

② need 作情态动词时只用于否定和疑问句中, 但作实意动词可用于肯定、否定和疑问句。还有 needn't have done 表示过去本不必要做却做了某事, 有惋惜含义; 而 didn't need / have to do 一般表示过去没有必要做也没有做。

Need I finish the job right now? You need to find a car mechanic.

We didn't need / have to take a taxi. It took us only fifteen minutes to walk there. 我们当时没必要打的。走过去只花了我们十五分钟。

③ **should have done** 表示过去本应该做却没做; **shouldn't have done** 表示过去本不应该做却做了。含有责备的含义。如:

He **shouldn't have shot** the robber.

④ **mustn't** 表示“禁止”, 而 **needn't** 表示“不必要”。对 **Must...?** 的否定回答应该是 “No, ...needn't 或 No, ...don't have to.” 而不是 “**mustn't**”。

### 3) 推测

① 表肯定推测的情态助动词按可能性从小到大排列: **might, may, could, should / ought to, will, must**; 其中 **might, may, could** 表示“可能”, **should, ought to** 表示“料想/按常理说应该”, **will, must** 表示“肯定, 一定”( **must** 的推测把握最大, 它表示没有其它的可能性了, 肯定是某种情况; 而 **will** 是一种主观感觉, 可译为“准是”)。

② 否定推测可能性从小到大排列为: **might not, may not, should not / ought not to, won't, couldn't / can't**。其中 **might not / may not** 意思是“可能不”, **should not / ought not to** 意思是“料想/按常理不会”, **won't** 意思是“不会”, “**couldn't / can't**”表示“不可能”( **couldn't** 语气委婉些)。

③ 这些表事实推测的情态动词都可以表示对各种时间的事实推测, 是哪种时间取决于情态助动词后面的主动词形式:

A. 情态助动词+**do**: 对现在的一般情况或将来进行推测

That man smiled at you. He **may know** you. 那个男的朝你笑了。他可能认识你。

Usually Lucy arrives very early, so she **shouldn't / oughtn't to be late** this time. 通常 Lucy 到得很早, 所以她这次不应该会迟到。

B. 情态助动词+**be doing**: 对说话时的行为进行推测(但 **will be doing** 还可以表示对将来某个时候正发生的行为进行推测, 所谓将来进行时)

It's already midnight and all lights are off now. The students **must be sleeping**. 已经半夜了, 所有的灯也都熄了。学生们肯定在睡觉。

It's already midnight. The students **will be sleeping** now.(对说话时的行为推测) 已经半夜了。学生们会是在睡觉。

Our airplane flies very fast. Perhaps we **will be flying** over the Pacific when we wake up tomorrow morning.(对将来某个时候正发生的行为进行推测) 我们的飞机飞得很快。可能我们明天早晨醒来的时候会在飞越太平洋。

C. 情态助动词+**have done**: 对发生过的动作行为进行推测

We can't find Tom anywhere. He might / may / could have left town. 我们到处都找不到 Tom。他可能已经离开镇子了。

She must have been very busy when we phoned her. 我们给她打电话时她肯定很忙。

● 注意:

A. mustn't 不能表推测, 而是禁止; 不可能是 couldn't / can't;

B. can 不能用于肯定句中表事实推测, 如: 不能说 She can be Lucy. 来表示“她可能是 Lucy。”只能说“She could / may / might be Lucy.” Can 可以用在否定句中和疑问句中表示对事实推测, can't 表示不可能, 和 couldn't 同义, 如前所述; 用在一般疑问句中, 如 Can that be Tom? 表示“可能……吗?”和用在特殊疑问句中, 如 What can it be? 表示“可能是什么呢?”

C. 但是 can 可以用在肯定句中, 表示理论上或泛泛而谈的可能性, 可翻译为“(有时)可能”, 它不是表示对具体事实的推测。如:

The temperature on the mountain top can be as low as minus 15 degrees. 山顶的气温有时会低达零下 15 度。

对比:

It's very cold now. It could / may / might be as low as minus 15 degrees. 现在好冷。现在的气温可能低达零下 15 度。(对事实推测)

4) 允许

表示允许的情态动词是: Can, could, may, might. Might 和 could 并不是过去时态, 只是比 may 和 can 委婉而已。Can 和 may 既可用于陈述句中表示许可, 也可用于疑问句表示请求或询问许可; 而 could 和 might 只用于疑问句中请求或询问许可。

Where can / could / may / might I make a phone call? Can / Could / May / Might I make a phone call?

Lucy: No, you can't / may not. But you can / may make one in the hall.

5) 请求对方做某事

表示请求对方做某事的情态动词是: will / can / could / would you... Could 和 would 并不是过去时态, 只是比 can 和 will 委婉而已。Would you mind 是一个常用的表达请求对方的固定结构。Would 不能换为 will。

Would you mind if I used your phone? 我可以用你的电话吗?

Would you mind my / me watching a bit of TV? 我看会儿电视可以吗?

6) 劝告

had better, might / may, could, can, should / ought to, have to, must 可以用来进行劝告。

You'd better ask for professional advice. 你最好寻求专业的意见。

You must hurry, or it would be too late. 你一定要快点，否则要迟到了。

She may as well rent a car for travelling. 她不妨租车出行。

## 7) 胆量

Dare 作情态动词表示“敢”，只用于否定和疑问句。

Dare you do that? I dare not ask him.

但 dare 作实意动词否定、疑问和否定句都可用。

she dares to touch that fierce dog.

## 8) 邀请

Will you / would you / can you / could you 都可以表示邀请。Would you like 是非常常用的邀请用语。Would 和 could 不是过去时态，而是比 will / can 更委婉的说法。如：

Will you have a drink? 要不要喝一杯？Can you come to my party? 你能否参加我的聚会？

Could you have dinner with me? 你能和我一起共进晚餐吗？Would you like to dance? 想跳舞吗？

## 9) will 和 would 的其它情态含义：

Will 还可表示以下情态含义，would 是其过去式。

(1) 表示主语当前的强烈决心，常翻译为“偏要，非得，坚决要”，相当于 insist that.../ insist on (doing) sth. 如：He will gamble despite my anger. = He insists on gambling despite my anger.

(2) 表示愿意。如：

I'll help you if you want. She said she would lend you some money.

(3) 表示客观规律，可译为“总会，终归”；或习惯行为倾向，可译为“常常，喜欢”。Would 表示过去的习惯行为倾向。

Cats and dogs won't get along. 猫和狗总是合不来。

She will sit under the tree thinking of the happy days. 她常坐在树下回想那些快乐的时光。

She would quarrel with her brother over food when she was young. 她小时候老是和她哥哥为争东西吃生气。

#### 10) shall

(1) shall + 第一人称和第三人称在疑问句中向听话人征求意见或指示。如：

Shall I open the door for you? 我给你开门，好吗？

Shall Tom help you with it? Tom 来帮你，行不行？

(2) 用于第二，三人称的陈述句是表示说话人（有时是第三方）（而非主语）的坚决意志或愿意（可理解为说话人的命令或要求，或威胁或警告或许诺）。

All students shall remain in their seats until all the papers have been collected. = **I don't** allow or **the rule doesn't** allow any student to move until all...(说话人命令)

You shall stay as you as you wish. = **I allow** you to stay... (说话人愿意)

You shall not get away with murder. = **I will see** that you don't get away with murder. (说话人威胁)

She shall not get a single penny in future if she talks back to me. = **I won't give** her a single... (说话人的坚决意志)

(3) shall 用于第一人称陈述句等于 will，表示主语的意图。

I shall / will write to her tomorrow. 我明天给他写信。

We shan't / won't go if it rains. 要是下雨我们就不去。

#### 11) should

(1) shall 的过去式，多用于宾语从句当中；

(2) 译为“应该”，表示责任、劝告等；

(3) 用于表示“建议、命令、要求、主张、指示”类含义的名词性从句中的谓语部分 should do, 但 should 可以省略；

(4) 虚拟语气中，表示发生的可能性不大，但也并非全无可能性，可译为“万一”。

If it should rain, buy an umbrella. 万一下雨就买一把伞。

Stay at home in case he should come to visit you. 呆在家里以防万一他来访。

#### 12) 虚拟语气

除了以上提到的 should 外，would, might, could 还可用于虚拟语气。

#### 4. 练习

选择正确的答案补全句子：

(1) A: \_\_\_\_\_ I get more food for you? We've got enough for everyone.

B: No, thanks. I'm full.

A. Could                      B. Would                      C. Shall                      D. Must

(2) A: May I smoke here?

B \_\_\_\_\_ .

A. No, you may not.                      B. No, you might not

C. No, you could not.                      D. No, you won't

(3) \_\_\_\_\_ it be John who always misses classes?

A. Will                      B. Can                      C. Must                      D. May

(4) No one \_\_\_\_\_ that to his face.

A. dares say                      B. dare says                      C. dares saying                      D. dare say

(5) Your coat needs to be washed, \_\_\_\_\_ it?

A. mustn't                      B. needn't                      C. doesn't                      D. can't

(6) Let us play basketball, \_\_\_\_\_?

A. will you                      B. don't you                      C. shall we                      D. do you

(7) A: Must I be here earlier?

B: No, you \_\_\_\_\_ because your home is far away.

A. mustn't                      B. don't                      C. don't have to                      D. 'd better not to

(8) I didn't go swimming in the lake, because no one \_\_\_\_\_ go with me.

A. must                      B. shall                      C. would                      D. might

(9) I \_\_\_\_\_ like some tea with sugar. What about you?

A. can                      B. will                      C. shall                      D. would

(10) The general himself \_\_\_\_\_ attend the meeting, but I'm not very certain.

A. must                      B. should                      C. ought to                      D. may

(11) A: I didn't see her yesterday.

B: Of course you \_\_\_\_\_ , because he had gone on a trip.



A. must have      B. may not have      C. couldn't have      D. mustn't have

(12) I met Mr White shortly after the war, and that \_\_\_\_\_ about March 1946, I suppose.

A. is      B. may be      C. must have been      D. may have been

(13) Birds \_\_\_\_\_ fly to the south in late autumn. It's warmer there.

A. will      B. would      C. should      D. may

(14) No boy \_\_\_\_\_ play football before they have taken all the exams. It's the rule.

A. must      B. may      C. shall      D. could

(15) I did ask her, but she \_\_\_\_\_ come because she didn't feel it appropriate to come.

A. couldn't      B. wouldn't      C. shouldn't      D. might not

湖南省教育厅版权所有  
www.hunanedu.net  
免费赠送

## (七) 非谓语动词

1. 概念和功能：做非谓语成分(主语、宾语、表语、定语、状语、宾补)的动词形式，包括-ing分词，不定式和-ed分词。

2. 非谓语动词使用条件：一个简单句里只能有一个谓语动词，是主要动作；如果还需要用动词，则只能用非谓语动词作其它成分，表示次要动作（如果一个句子里面有两个或两个以上的谓语动词，必定各自有自己的主语，每一套主谓结构实际就是一个小简单句，每两个小简单句之间应该有连词来表达它们之间的逻辑关系，这样的大句子就不是简单句，而是复杂句了）。

3. 各种非谓语动词的形式和含义：

1) 不定式：

(1) to do:

A. 意义：多表**后时**，后于主要动作（一般为谓语动作）发生；少数动词表示和主要动作相比是一个常态或者经常发生或者是一个泛指动作；多表示**主动关系**，少数表示和相关名词或代词有动宾关系

B. 句法功能：可作除谓语之外的任何成分（主，宾，表，定，状，宾补）

C. 例句：

**To be a teacher** is my dream. (主)

I don't want **to drink**. (宾) Her intention is **to advocate foreign language study**. (表) I am advertising for a young woman **to look after my baby**. (定，主动关系) She has nobody **to talk with**. (定，动宾关系) She worked day and night **to work out a solution**. (状) Parents expect their children **to succeed**. (宾补)

(2) to be done:

A. 意义：时间关系同 **to do**；表示**被动关系**

B. 句法功能：同 **to do**.

C. 例句：It's nothing funny **to be called a liar**. (主, 泛指动作) I don't want **to be made to eat dog food**. (宾) My dream is **to be accepted by Oxford University**. (表) The meeting **to be held** is about environmental protection. (定) **To be protected by the police**, she has to report to them about her situation. (状) The children wanted their efforts **to be appreciated**. (宾补)

(3) to be doing / to have done / to have been done / to have been doing:

A. 意义：与主要动作完全同时（正在进行）；主动关系/先于主要动作发生；主动关系/先于主要动作发生；被动关系/在主要动作之前开始一直延续到主要动作或者在主要动作之前某一点时刻正在发生；主动关系

B. 句法功能：

这四种形式的不定式一般只和固定搭配中使用，如：**seem/appear/pretend/be likely/be said/be thought/be considered/ be reported/be believed /be supposed / turn out /mean/intend** 等+不定式

C. 例句：They **pretended to be fighting** when the police passed by. = They pretended that **they were fighting...**

They **are said to have cloned animals** before. = It's said that **they have cloned...**

She **is likely to have been trained** as a zoo keeper. = It's likely that she **was trained** as a zoo keeper.

She **is reported to have been working** on the plan these days. = It's reported that **she has been working on...**

2) -ing 分词

(1) doing

A. 意义：与主要动作相比是同时关系，有时候表示是一个泛指动作；主动关系（表示泛指动作时是动作发出者是泛指的任何人）

B. 句法功能：

可作除谓语之外的任何成分（主，宾，表，定，状，宾补）

C. 例句：**Praising children** can work better than **criticizing them**. (主/宾，泛指动作)  
Teachers enjoy **pointing out their students' mistakes**. (宾) **Seeing** is **believing**. (主/表，泛指动作)  
scientists **pushing ahead with the research** (定) **Using up the Earth's coal and oil reserves**, the human race has to find alternative energy. (状) Keep the ball **rolling** (宾补)

(2) being done

A. 意义：时间关系同 doing。被动关系。

B. 句法功能：主，宾，表，定，状，宾补

C. **Being built**, the bridge suddenly collapsed. (状) **Being interfered with** while studying can be the worst thing. (主) the boy **being beaten** (定) I can't stand **being blamed for nothing**

**wrong.**(宾) What I really enjoy is **being amused by stand-ups.** (表) Seeing the front door **being painted,** I got in through the back door.

(3) having done

A. 意义: 先于主要动作发生; 主动关系

B. 句法功能: 多做状语, 有时做主, 宾, 表 (不做定语和宾补)

C. 例句: I am sorry for **having been / being late for the assembly yesterday.**(宾)

**Having done a similar job before** gives him an advantage over me.(主)

The only thing you can tell him is **your having worked as a teacher.**(表) **Having worked as a primary school teacher,** he soon adapted to being with children.(状)

(4) having been done

A. 意义: 先于主要动作发生; 被动关系。做状语时, 如果不需要特别强调此一动作发生在先, **having been** 可省略。但如果强调已发生多少次或多久, 最好不省略。

B. 句法功能: 同 **having done**

C. 例句: **Having been criticized for making a small mistake** really upsets me.(主)

I admit **having been / being fired by the company.**(宾) What I told her is **my having been employed by the company.** (表) **(Having been) Educated in Scotland,** he knows British table manners well.(状)

**Having been humiliated several times,** he didn't want to attend these parties any more.

3) done

A. 意义: 多表示先于主要动作发生(但持续性动词一般没有这个含义, 而是表示是一个常态); 被动关系

B. 句法功能: 定, 状, 表, 宾补

(做状语时有时可以和 **having been done** 互换。见上解释。

C. 例句: the subject **discussed at the meeting** (定) **(Having been)Completed,** the building looks very beautiful.(状) The lake is **heavily polluted.**(表) They left the houses **destroyed.**(宾补)

4. 非谓语动词短语的否定构成: **not** 或其它否定词+非谓语动词短语

5. 练习

1) 更正下列句中动词错误

- (1) There are many people are watching the game.
- (2) Foreigners learn English is very difficult.
- (3) Find a place to park is not easy.
- (4) Waiting for her bus, a car hit her.
- (5) To learn English well, her father bought her a dictionary.
- (6) Teenagers easily become interesting in this game.
- (7) Making such a stupid mistake is terribly embarrassed.
- (8) It was silly of you believe what he said.
- (9) Most children are interested in listen to stories.
- (10) Jim is very good at making things and repair them.
- (11) He decided to go to the south, find a good job and living there.
- (12) His sister will get married on Monday, Thomas will take Sunday and Monday off.
- (13) I suggest her to take her son on the trip.
- (14) Practising medicine is my wish.
- (15) I have nobody to talk.

2) 将下列各句中的从句改造成非谓语动词短语

- (1) When I was serving a customer, I heard someone shouting for help.
- (2) As she had passed all the tests, she got her diploma.
- (3) That he is still dependent on his parents makes him a laughing stock.
- (4) As he is inspired by the hero's experience, he decides to work harder to achieve his goal.
- (5) Since the weather is becoming fine, we will hold the sports meeting tomorrow.
- (6) The moment he heard the news, he cried.
- (7) When he had opened the door, the bird flew out.
- (8) He got up very early so that he would catch the six thirty bus.

## (八) 一致

“一致”就是指前后照应，英语中的一致包括主语部分和谓语部分的一致以及代词和被指代名词短语的一致。

1. 主谓一致的概念：就是指谓语动词在人称和数方面要和主语部分对应。

2. 主谓一致的原则：

1) 语法一致：即主语和谓语在语法上保持一致。就是说如果主语为单数形式，谓语就用单数形式；若主语为复数形式，谓语也应用复数形式。

(1) 单数名词、不可数名词、不定式短语、动词 -ing 形式、或主语从句作主语，谓语动词用单数形式；复数主语则用动词的复数形式。

To say is one thing, to do is another. Who will do the job hasn't been decided yet.

(2) A+with, together / along with, as well as, besides, but, except, including, in addition to, like, no less than, rather than, instead of B 应根据 A 确定。

The father with his two sons has gone to the cinema.

No one except the two boys was late for class.

Li Ming, rather than his classmates, has let out the secret.

(3) “more than one 或 many a + 单数名词”作主语时，谓语动词用单数形式。

More than one person has known it. Many a pilot was killed in the raid.

注：“more + 复数名词 than one”作主语，谓语则用复数形式。

More persons than one have known it.

(4) “一两个”，英语中用“one or two + 名词复数”或“a ( an ) + 名词单数 or two”两种形式表达，前者谓语用复数形式，后者谓语用单数形式。

One or two days are enough for them.

A day or two is enough for them.

(5) and 连接两个名词作复合主语时，谓语动词用复数形式。

My father and mother are away on business.

但是，当两个名词表示同一个人、同一事物、同一概念或一套完整的东西时（其特征是 and 后的名词前无任何冠词），谓语动词应用单数形式。

The writer and poet has decided to be on holiday in Yunnan. (对比: The writer and the poet have decided to be on holiday in Yunnan. )

A cart and horse is running up the road.

注: 当 and 连接的并列单数主语前分别有 no, each, every, many a, more than one 等修饰时, 谓语要用单数形式。

In China every man and every woman who has a citizenship has the right to vote and to be voted.

Many a teacher and many a student has seen the film.

(6) 不定代词 one, no one, the other, another, anyone, anybody, someone, somebody, everyone, everybody, nobody, anything, something, everything, nothing, each, either 以及被 each, every 修饰的名词作主语, 尽管有些表示复数意义, 但是它们的谓语应该用单数形式。

Is everybody here today?

(7) 在定语从句中, 从句中的谓语动词应该与先行词保持一致。例如:

The teacher who teaches us English is from Inner Mongolia. Who is the girl that is in red shirt?

2) 意义一致: 即谓语动词的单复数形式不是根据语法形式, 而是根据主语的内在涵义 (即有时主语的单数形式表达的是复数涵义, 反之亦然) 确定的。

(1) 有些集体名词, 如: 主语 family, group, army, government, audience 等表示整体概念时, 应看作单数, 谓语也用单数形式; 但若表示组成整体的各个成员时, 其谓语则应用复数形式。

My family is quite big. (整体)      My family like watching TV. (整体的组成部分)

(2) 有些集体名词, 如: people (人们), police, cattle, personnel (全体人员), militia (民兵), 谓语应该用复数形式。

The police are after a murderer.

注: people 作“民族”解时, 其单数形式为 people, 复数形式为 peoples。当它作主语时, 谓语动词的单复数形式应视情况而定。

A great people always learns from disasters.      The Chinese and the Japanese are two peace-loving peoples.

(3) 表示物品的名词用量词表示具体数量时, 其谓语形式应与量词的数保持一致。

That pair of trousers was sold out, but these pairs of trousers are still on the counter.

A basket of peaches is on the table.

(4) 复数名词短语表示度量、距离、金额、时间或专有名词，要看做一个整体，其谓语动词要用单数形式。

Ten years is a moment in history. The Arabian Nights is a very interesting story-book.

The United States is the only superpower in the world now.

(5) “分数 / 百分数 + of + 名词”以及“all (most, some, any, half, a lot, the rest) + of + 名词”作主语时，根据 of 后的名词确定。

Three-fourths of the surface of the earth is water. Ten percent of the apples are bad.

(6) the 与某些形容词搭配表示一类人时，如 the dead, the blind, the British 等，谓语用复数形式。

The rich are getting richer and the poor are getting poorer in some countries.

(7) “...kind(s) / sort(s) / type(s) of / style(s) of + 名词”作主语，根据 kind/sort / type / style 的单复数确定。

This kind of book is sold in that shop. Many kinds of shoes are sold in that shop.

注：“名词 + of + a (the, this, that, these, those, all, some, many 等) + kind (s)”结构作主语，谓语动词的单复数形式则与名词的数一致。

A book of this kind is sold in that shop. Apples of these kinds are sour.

(8) “a + 单数名词 + and a half”和“one and a half + 复数名词”作主语，谓语用单数形式。

One and a half pears has been left on the table.

3) 就近一致：这一原则是指如果句子中有两个或两个以上的主语时，谓语动词的单复数形式要根据靠近它的主语的单复数来确定。主要有以下两种情况：

(1) or, either ... or ..., neither ... nor ..., not only ... but also ..., not ... but ... 等连接并列主语时。

Not his parents but he doesn't want to go. Neither you nor I am a stranger here. 但是：

Do his parents or he want to go? 因为 his parents 离 do 近。

Does neither he nor his classmates know the secret? 因为 he 离 does 近。

(2) There be + 多个名词作主语，谓语动词常与最靠近 be 的名词的单复数一致。

There is an apple, two pears and some oranges on the plate.



There are three students, two strangers and our headmaster talking together.

### 3. 练习

更正下列句中的主谓一致错误:

- (1) Both paper and ink is used up
- (2) Doing two things at a time are not good.
- (3) This pair of shoes are my brother's.
- (4) The team was having a celebration when I came in.
- (5) Physics are one of my favourite subjects.
- (6) Each of the boys have a dictionary.
- (7) The Chinese people speaks Chinese.
- (8) Are all the money for the sports meeting?
- (9) The number of trees was planted yesterday.
- (10) Ten minutes are enough for you to do this exercise.

## (九) 主谓倒装

1. 倒装概念：通常英语句子中的主语是在谓语动词之前，这种语序称为自然语序；反之，如果谓语动词在主语之前，这种语序就称为倒装语序。倒装语序又分为部分倒装（即把谓语动词的助动词移至主语之前）和全部倒装（即把整个谓语动词置于主语之前）。

2. 倒装分类：

1) 全部倒装

(1) there 引出的完全倒装句：除了最常见的 there be 句型以外，there 还可以接 appear to be, happen to be, seem to be, exist, lie, remain, stand 等，一般都译成“有”，构成完全倒装句。

There seems to be no need to go now.

Long long ago, there lived a king.

(2) here, there, now, then, thus 等副词置于句首，谓语动词是 be, come, go, lie, run 时，用全部倒装结构。

There goes the bell.

Then came the chairman.

Here is your letter.

(3) 当表示趋向或地点的状语置于句首，且谓语是表示运动的动词时，用全部倒装结构。

Out rushed a missile from under the bomber.

South of the city lies a big steel factory.

注意：上述全部倒装的句型结构的主语如果是人称代词时，则不用倒装结构。

Here he comes.

(4) 为了句子平衡或强调某一成分，有时将表语置于句首而使用全部倒装结构。

Gone are the days when we lived in the countryside.

Present at the meeting are my friends from South America.

2) 部分倒装

(1) 在 so（肯定句），neither 和 nor（否定句）引起的句子中，表示前面的情况也适用于另一人或物时，用部分倒装结构。

I went there yesterday. So did he.

Tom doesn't like bananas. Neither (Nor) do I.

但如果只是重复前面一句话的意思，主语指的是同一人或物，则不用倒装。

— It was cold yesterday.

— So it was.

(2) “only + 状语”位于句首被强调时，用部分倒装结构，如果 only 强调状语从句，要倒装主句，而非从句。

Only in this way can you solve the problem.

Only when the war was over could he go on studying.

(3) 否定谓语的副词或实际否定谓语的不定代词位于句首，如 no, not, never, seldom, little, hardly, rarely, scarcely, nowhere, nothing, nobody, no one, none, few 或实际否定谓语的介词短语位于句首，如 in no way, on no account, at no time, in no case, by no means, not until 等，句子用部分倒装结构。

Never in my life have I heard such a thing.

At no time and under no circumstances will China be the first to use nuclear weapons. 在任何时间或情况下中国都不会首先使用核武器。

Not until then did he come and help.

注意：

① 否定介词短语如果实际不是否定谓语，则不能倒装。In no time (=very soon) he will be back.

② Not until 后跟状语从句时，需要倒装的是主句。

Not until the child fell asleep did the mother leave the room.

(4) 当句子以 not only ... but also, no sooner ... than, hardly / scarcely ... when 结构中连接的是两个分句时，not only / no sooner / hardly / scarcely 后的分句用部分倒装结构。

Hardly / Scarcely had he got on the bus when he heard a shout.

No sooner had I gone to sleep than the telephone rang.

Not only did he buy a bike for me but he also sent it to my house.

(5) 在 so (such) ... that 结构中，so 或 such 位于句首时，其所在分句用部分倒装结构。

So angry was he that he couldn't speak.

(6) 非真实条件句中, if sb / sth should do / were (to do) / had done 可以倒装成 should sb / sth do, were sb / sth..., had sb / sth done。

Had I been less busy, I could have helped you.

Should the weather become worse, I would stay at home.

Were I a man, I would have bigger ambitions.

### 3. 练习

更正下列句子语序错误:

(1) Out the children rushed.

(2) Look! Here the bus comes!

(3) So busy she is that she has no time to spare.

(4) He is not coming. Neither I am.

(5) Few friends he has in the town.

(6) In no case we will give up our efforts.

(7) With nobody helping around did I still manage to get the stuck car movingt.

(8) Not until did I wake up I found him gone.

## [十] 复杂句

---

### 1. 复杂句的概念:

和简单句对应，指的是一个大句子里面含有两个或两个以上的分句，每相邻的分句之间要用一个且只能用一个连词连接表示其逻辑关系（极个别分句之间可省略表示逻辑关系的连词，如动词宾语从句前的 **that**）。

### 2. 复杂句分句之间的逻辑关系可分为:

1) 并列关系：两个分句之间同等重要，没有主从之分。表示分句之间并列逻辑关系的连词：**and, or, either...or, neither...nor..., but, so, not only...but also..., yet** 等（注意：**either...or..., neither...nor..., not only...but also...**是一个整体，视作一个连词）。如：**He came out and (he) saw the baby in the basket. Not only will they invest in the major towns, but also they will expand their business kingdom to the countryside. They found me out, so I had to escape quickly.**

2) 主从关系：一个分句为主，叫主句；另一个分句为从句，是主句的成分，如从句是主句中一个名词的定语，则后者叫定语从句。连接从句和主句的连词又叫从句的引导词。如：**They didn't tell me why I couldn't enter the race.** 下一章详细处理主从关系。

但一个复杂句可能里面包含两个以上的分句，也就可能有多层不同性质的逻辑关系。如：**They thought for a while and (they) refused to show up at the meeting because they knew that nothing would be achieved even if they did.** 其中分句 **They thought for a while** 和 **(they) refused to show up at the meeting** 是并列关系，连词是 **and**；**because they knew...** 是主句的原因状语从句，连词是 **because**；**that nothing would be achieved** 是 **knew** 的宾语从句，连词是 **that**；**even if they did** 是分句 **nothing would be achieved** 的让步状语从句，连词是 **even if**。

## (十一)主从复合句及“定语从句”

### 1. 主从复合句的概念:

即上一章所提的由两个或两个以上的分句构成一个复杂句, 其中一个为主句, 其余的分句为主句的成分。

### 2. 主句和从句的逻辑关系分类:

1) 从句作主句的定语(修饰主句中的一个名词短语或代词), 这种从句叫定语从句。具体见下节。

2) 从句做主句的状语。这种从句叫状语从句。

3) 从句象一个名词结构一样, 在从句中作主语、宾语、表语、同位语, 这种从句叫名词性从句。

### 3. 从句的结构:

所有从句的结构都是这个模式: **连词**(或称**从句引导词**, 单纯只起连接作用或兼作从句成分)+**主语部分**+**谓语部分**。

### 4. 定语从句

1) 定语从句的概念: 跟在一个名词短语或代词后面, 修饰该名词短语或代词的一个分句。被修饰的名词短语或代词叫先行词。如下列例句中的        部分为主句, 黑斜体部分为先行词,        部分为定语从句部分:

**Justin's mother**, **who was working that night**, was surprised that his son did not tell anyone that he was staying out late.

Standing inside were lots of **white-skinned strange-looking creatures** which had large black eyes.

### 2) 定语从句引导词:

在定语从句中, 从句引导词既连接从句和主句又作从句的成分。共分为三类

(1) 关系代词, 在定语从句中指代先行词, 作定语从句的主语、宾语或表语。包括:

① 指代人(也就是引导修饰人的定语从句)的关系代词 **who, whom, that**, 其中 **who** 和 **that** 既可以作主语也可以做宾语, **whom** 只可以作宾语。作表语只用 **that**。

**The police officer** **who / that had ruled out the possibility of murder** was very experienced. (who / that 作定语从句的主语)

The boy who(m) / that they found missing was called Justin Foster.(who / whom / that 作定语从句的谓语动词 found 的宾语)

Tom is not the small boy that he used to be. (that 在从句中作表语)

② 指代事物(也就是引导修饰事物的定语从句) 的关系代词 which 和 that, 两者都既可以作主语也可以做宾语。That 还可作表语。

The spaceship that / which moved around to the side of the house gave off very bright lights.(that / which 作定语从句的主语)

Water, without which humans couldn't live, is the most valuable resource on the earth.(which 作定语从句中的介词 without 的宾语)

This place is not the village that it was ten years ago.(that 在从句中作表语)

(2) 关系限定词 whose, 在定语从句中作定语, 指代“名词先行词's”或物主限定词 his, her 等, 引导修饰人(间或为事物, 此时可用 whose 可被 of which 替代)的定语从句。

The strange-looking man whose eyes were large and black walked over to Justin.(whose 作 eyes 的定语, 指代 the strange-looking man's, 从句修饰人)

The house whose windows we have just fixed were broken into by burglars.(whose 作 windows 的定语, 指代 the house's, 从句修饰事物)

(3) 关系副词 where, when 和 why, 在定语从句中作状语, 相当于“介词+地点名词先行词/时间名词先行词/原因名词先行词”, 各自引导修饰这些名词的定语从句。

The mountain where the volcano lies is not far from here.(where 在从句中作谓语动词 lies 的状语, 相当于 in the mountain 从句修饰 the mountain)

The days when people felt content with a simple life are forever gone.(when 在从句中作谓语动词 felt 的状语, 相当于 in the days, 从句修饰 the days)

He gave us no reason why he took the job.(why 在从句中作谓语动词 took 的状语, 相当于 for the reason, 从句修饰 reason)

4) 介词+定语从句引导词 which / whom:

当定语从句引导词作介词的宾语时, 可以将介词提到引导词前, 以强调介词和引导词的介宾关系; 介词+which / whom 在从句中作状语或定语; 有些情况下, 介词+which 相当于 where / when / why。如:

The man with whom you talked is an expert in earthquakes.(with whom 在从句中作状语修饰谓语动词 talked)

That's **the gate** at which the young woman was picked up by some strangers.(at which=where, 在从句中作状语修饰谓语动词 was picked up)

**The day** on which Nelson Mandela helped me was one of my happiest.(on which=when, 在从句中作状语修饰谓语动词 helped)

I can't tell you **the reason** for which she insists on doing that.(for which=why, 在从句中作状语修饰谓语动词 insists)

The shelters took in **thousands of flood survivors**, many of whom / of whom many suffered from malaria.(of whom 在从句中作定语修饰 many)

**The house** of which the windows / the windows of which are open was broken into by burglars. (of which 在从句中修饰定语 the windows) = The house whose windows are open was broken...

#### 5) 定语从句的分类:

##### (1) 限定定语从句:

起着界定先行词的身份, 而不至与同类人或事物混淆的定语从句, 一般不用逗号和主句隔开。

One of my brothers who is in the army now used to be an art student. 我一个现在当兵的兄弟学过艺术。(定语从句界定 one of my brothers 的身份: 有多个兄弟, 这里指的是当兵的兄弟)

The travellers who had already been informed about the flood stopped their journey. 那些已经获悉洪灾的路人暂停了行程。(只有获悉洪灾的路人才终止了行程, 没有获悉洪灾的路人并没有暂停其行程。)

##### (2) 非限定定语从句:

不起界定先行词的身份作用, 因为先行词身份已经为读者或听话人所确定而不会混淆(要么由于同类只有其一个, 或者上下文已经让读者或听话人明确其身份), 而是起着给先行词增加信息的作用。一般要用逗号和主句隔开。不能用 that 引导非限定定语从句。

My brother, who is in the army now, used to be an artist. 我兄弟学过艺术, 他现在当兵。(只有一个兄弟)

The travellers, who had already been informed about the flood, stopped their journey. 由于路人们已经获悉了洪灾, 他们都暂停了行程。(所有的路人们都终止了其行程, 用从句顺便说明一下其原因)

#### 6) that 和 which / who 的适用范围:

两者都可以引导修饰事物的定语从句, 但如下情况多用 that:



(1) 先行词是表物不定代词 all,few,little,much,something,nothig,anything 等。如: All that we have to do is to practise every day.

(2) 先行词被序数词或形容词最高级所修饰。如: The first lesson that I learned will never be forgotten.This is the best film I've ever seen.

(3) 先行词被 all, any, every, each, few, little, no, some 等修饰。如: I have read all the books(that)you gave me.

(4) 先行词被 the only, the very, the same, the last 修饰。如: He is the only person that/(who) I want to talk to.

(5) 先行词包括人和物。如: They talked of things and persons that they remembered.

(6) 当句中已有 who 时, 为避免重复。如: Who is the man that is talking to John?

(7) 用作关系代词, 修饰表示时间的名词如 day, time, moment 等, 代替 when。如: It happened on the day that/when I was born.

7) as, which 引导非限定性定语从句差别:

由 as, which 引导的非限定性定语从句, as 和 which 可代整个主句(即先行词是整个主句), 相当于 and this(as 还带有“正如”含义)。As 从句可置于主句前后中, which 在主句后。

As we know, smoking is harmful to one's health.= Smoking, as we know, is harmful to one's health. = Smoking is harmful to one's health, as we know.

The sun heats the earth, which is very important to us.

8)选择引导词的原则:

看定语从句还需要什么成分, 如果缺主宾表, 就用关系代词, 再根据以下情况确定是哪个具体的关系代词: 修饰物或人; 作主或宾还是表语; 限定或非限定; 特殊规定或搭配。

如果从句不缺少主宾表, 此时句子看上去很健全, 那只能添加枝叶成分状语, 则用关系副词, 再根据是修饰时间、地点还是原因的先行词确定具体的关系副词。

#### 4. 练习

将下列划线的定语部分改成定语从句, 不改变句意:

(1) The man to announce the result is my father.

(2) Do we have any chairs for the little kids to sit on?

(3) The bride, with a flower in her hair, is smiling at the guests.

- (4) The clothes donated by the town will be sent to the earthquake-affected area.
- (5) The apartments being painted were for the government employees.
- (6) Visitors to the tourist spot seeming to have come from other parts of the country are amazed to see the scenery.
- (7) The guy didn't get back in time, so his brother called to ask where he was.

湖南省教育厅版权所有  
免费赠送  
www.hunanedu.net

## [十二] 状语从句

---

### 1. 状语从句的概念

从句做主句的状语（修饰主句中的一个动词，多数是修饰谓语动词），这种从句叫状语从句

### 2. 状语从句的分类及其引导词

#### 1) 地点状语从句

由 **where** (在...地方), **wherever** (无论在...地方) 引导，两者还在从句中作地点状语。如：

**Where I live** there are plenty of trees. 我住的地方树很多。

#### 2) 方式状语从句

由 **as**, **as if**, **as though** 引导。

(1) **as**: 就像..., 按照...的方式，同时在从句中作方式状语。

**Always do to the others as you would be done by.** 你想要别人怎么对待你就一定要怎样对待别人。

**Leave the table as it is.** 桌上的东西别动它(就让它象这个样子)。

(2) **as if / as though**: 仿佛.....似的，不在从句中作成分，只引导从句。

两者的意义和用法完全相同，引出的状语从句谓语有时候用虚拟语气，表示与事实相反，有时也用陈述语气，表示所说情况可能是事实或实现的可能性较大。

**The waves dashed on the rocks as if (they were) in anger.** 波涛冲击着岩石，似乎很愤怒。

**They completely ignore these facts as if / as though they never existed.** 他们完全不管这些事实，似乎它们根本就不存在。

#### 3) 原因状语从句

用 **because**, **since**, **as** 和 **for** 引导。它们都只有引导从句作用，不作从句成分。

(1) **because**: 因为...

语气最强，用来说明听话人或读者所不知的原因，回答 **why** 提出的问题。

**I didn't go because I was afraid.** 我当时没去因为我害怕。

(2) **as / since**: 当原因是显而易见的或已为人们所知，就用 **as / since** (由于，既然)。

We have to delay our journey since / as the weather is so bad. = As...so bad, ...we have to delay...由于天气太糟，我们就要推迟行程。

(3) for: 因为...

由 because 引导的从句如果放在句末，且前面有逗号，则可以用 for 来代替。但如果不是说明直接原因，而是倒推的原因，就只能用 for。

He is absent today because he is ill. = He is absent..., for he is ill.

#### 4) 目的状语从句

目的状语从句由 so that / in order that(以便...), in case(以防万一...)等词引导，它们都只引导从句，不作从句成分。

He wrote down the name in case he forgot it.

注意：so that...从句不能放在主句前面。但 in order that...从句位置可前可后。

#### 5) 结果状语从句:

由 so / such...that...和 so that...引导。

(1) so(+形容词副词原级) that... 或 such(+名词短语)that...: 如此...以至于...。So 在主句中作程度状语，such 作定语；that 只引导从句，不作成分。

He is such a good teacher that we all like him.

(2) so that...: 结果...

The sun burned for months so that all the rivers were dried.

注意：so that...也可引导目的状语从句，但通常从句中有 will / can / may 等情态动词。

#### 6) 条件状语从句

引导词有 if, unless, as/so long as, on condition that 等。它们都不作从句成分，只有引导作用。

(1) if: 如果...

You will suffer if you ignore these facts.

He said we would be OK if we warmed up for ten minutes or so before jumping into the river.

(2) unless = if not: 除非...，如果不...

Let's go out for a walk unless you are too tired. =

If you are not too tired, let's go out for a walk.

(3) as / so long as: 只要...

As / So long as you have access to the Internet, it will be easy for you to get information.

(4) on condition that: 条件是...

I will lend you the car on condition that you return it in two days.

注意：条件状语从句中通常用一般现在时表达一般将来时，一般过去时表达过去将来时。

## 7) 让步状语从句

引导词有：

(1) though, although, even though: 尽管，虽然。不作从句成分，只有引导作用。

Although / Though / Even though it's raining, they are still working in the field.

(2) as: 尽管，虽然。不作从句成分，只有引导作用。

注意：一定有强调部分前置于引导词 as 前。模式是：

表语(单数名词前不能有冠词)/状语副词/谓语行为动词原形+ as 主语+谓语其它部分。

Try as you will, you won't be able to persuade him. 不管你怎么努力，你都说服不了他。

Young as he is, he knows two languages.

Child as you are, you are as able as a grown-up.

Hard as he pushed, the board wouldn't move.

(3) even if: 即使...。不作从句成分，只有引导作用。

Even if you are in power, don't forget it's the people that make the difference. 即使你掌了权，也要记住人民才是决定因素。

(4) whether...or...: 不管...还是...。不作从句成分，只有引导作用。

Whether you believe it or not, it is true.

(5) no matter + 疑问词 (= 疑问词-ever): 不管.../无论...。What(ever)和 which(ever)在从句中作主或宾语或定语；who(ever)在作主或宾语；whom(ever)作宾语；when(ever) / where(ever) / how(ever)作状语。注意“however+adj. / adv.原级”表示无论到达什么程度，however 单独用还可以表示无论用什么方法。

No matter what happened, he would not mind it. = Whatever happened, he would not mind it.

Whoever can do the job, we will take them. = No matter who can...

## 8) 时间状语从句

引导词有以下各类:

### (1) while, when, as: 在.....时候

基本区别: **when** 和 **as** 既可以表示点动作(即瞬间动作), 又可以表示段动作(即延续动作); **while** 只可以表示段动作; 只有 **as** 才可以表示“一边.....(一边)”和“随着.....(这时 **as** 后的从句动词应该表示发展变化类的动作)

具体如下:

① 若主句是一个瞬间动作, 从句的是一个持续动作, 三者都可用来引导从句:

He fell asleep when / while / as he was reading.

注意: **as** 用于引出一个持续性动词表示“在.....期间”时, 其谓语通常只能是动作和发展意义的动词, 一般不能是状态动词(如 **be, seem, love, want, agree, see, know, have** 等), **as** 与这些动词连用时是“由于”之意。如:

A: I'm going to the post office. 我要去邮局。

B: While (NOT as) you're there, can you get me some stamps? 你在那里的时候, 能帮我弄几张邮票吗?

② 主从句表示的两个同时进行的动作含有“一边.....一边”之意思, 通常用 **as**:

She sang as she went along.

③ 若主从句表示的是两个同时(或几乎同时)发生的瞬间动作, 从句用 **as / when** 引导:

I thought of it just when / as you opened your mouth.

The audience applauded John when / as he ended his speech.

④ 若主从句所表示的动作是两个先后发生的瞬间动作时, 一般要用 **when**:

I will go home when he comes back.

⑤ 表示两个同步发展变化的情况, 相当于汉语的“随着”, 一般用 **as**:

Things are getting better and better as time goes on.

⑥ **when** 可用作并列连词, 表示“这时(突然)”, 也是表示瞬间动作; **while** 也可以用作并列连词, 表示“而”、“却”(表示对比); 但 **as** 则没有类似用法:

We were about to start when it began to rain.

### (2) 表示“一.....就.....”的状语从句引导词

Hardly...when / no sooner...than(hardly 和 no sooner 置于句首其所属分句要部分倒装), as soon as, the moment / minute / second 等。

I had hardly / scarcely got home when it began to rain.

I had no sooner got home than it began to rain.

As soon as I got home, it began to rain. = The moment / minute / second I got home, it began to rain.

(3) before: 在.....之前。

We cleaned the classroom before we left school yesterday.

(4) after: 在.....之后。

After you use plastic bags, you mustn't throw them about.

(5) since: 自从...。主句常用现在/过去完成时。

We have made many dumplings since we began to cook.

(6) until / till: 直到.....时。有两种用法:

(1)主句谓语动词是持续性动词时, 主句常用肯定形式。

Stay here until / till I come back.

(2)主句的谓语动词是瞬间动词时, 从句常用否定形式, 常译为“直到.....才.....”。如:

Don't go **until** / till I come back. = Stay here until / till I come back.

注意: 时间状语从句中不能用将来时态 **will / would do** 和 **be going to do**, 要表示一般将来和过去将来要用一般现在时态或一般过去时态。

### 3. 练习

1) 更正下列状语从句中的错误

(1) They stood there where the child had been killed.

(2) We had so challenging tasks that we won't be able to finish them in time.

(3) If he will become a street cleaner, his parents will be disappointed.

(4) Join the party unless you like it.

(5) Although we have seized the city, but the enemy can take it over any time.

(6) While he saw me at the corner, I smiled at him.

- (7) I was talking with my mum on the phone while I heard the gunshot.
- (8) When she gets older, she becomes weaker.
- (9) They will introduce you to the audience when you will come to the floor.
- (10) She promised that she would return the monkey to the zoo as soon as she would catch it.

2) 选择正确的答案

- (1) You won't be on time \_\_\_\_\_ you hurry.
- A. except                      B. unless                      C. without                      D. beside
- (2) No matter \_\_\_\_\_ hard it may be, I must try.
- A. what                      B. how                      C. any way                      D. some way
- (3) He agreed \_\_\_\_\_ they might not bother him any more.
- A. so that                      B. in order                      C. only that                      D. so as
- (4) \_\_\_\_\_ the road was icy, Mike drove very fast.
- A. Though                      B. Because                      C. For                      D. As
- (5) As soon as I \_\_\_\_\_ my meal, I left the restaurant.
- A. finish                      B. will finish                      C. finished                      D. have finished
- (6) People do not know the value of freedom \_\_\_\_\_ they have lost it.
- A. until                      B. when                      C. since                      D. as
- (7) We are very glad \_\_\_\_\_ you will cooperate with us in this project.
- A. that                      B. because                      C. as                      D. for
- (8) Jean had not realized how long the magazine was or \_\_\_\_\_ it was to read.
- A. how too difficult                      B. how difficult
- C. what too difficulty                      D. what difficulty
- (9) I will treat you \_\_\_\_\_ you treat me.
- A. as                      B. so                      C. or                      D. and
- (10) You may do anything you like \_\_\_\_\_ it is not against the law.
- A. even if                      B. so long as                      C. unless                      D. as soon as



(11) He hurried out of the room \_\_\_\_\_ the meeting ended.

- A. the moment      B. a moment ago      C. after a minute      D. minute after

(12) — How long has this bookshop been in business?

— \_\_\_\_\_ 1982.

- A. After      B. In      C. From      D. Since

(13) Mother was \_\_\_\_\_ worried because little Alice was ill, especially \_\_\_\_\_ Father was away in France.

- A. as      B. that      C. during      D. if

(14) If we work with a strong will, we can overcome any difficulty, \_\_\_\_\_ great it is.

- A. what      B. how      C. however      D. whatever

(15) You should make it a rule to leave things \_\_\_\_\_ you can find them again.

- A. when      B. where      C. then      D. there

### (十三) 名词性从句

1. 名词性从句的概念：名词性从句是一个相当于名词短语的从句，充当主句的主语、表语、宾语和同位语，分别称为主语从句、表语从句、宾语从句和同位语从句。

2. 名词性从句的引导词和种类：

1) 根据名词性从句的引导词，名词性从句有以下几类：

(1) that 引导的名词性从句表示一件事情。

注意：因为 that 后面是对某事的完整陈述，所以 that 在从句中不作任何成分，没有意义，只引导从句；但除了引导动词宾语从句的 that 可省略外，其余情况都不能省略。另外 that 不能引导介词宾语从句(除了 except 和 in 后面)。

That he was his enemy's son shocked him. = It shocked him that he was... 他是他敌人的儿子让他很惊愕。(主语从句)

He knew (that) the professor had refused to take on his son. 他知道教授已经拒绝了收他的儿子为学生。(动词宾从句)

He was quite good-looking except that he was a little too short. 那时候他除了个子矮了点还算长得不错。(介词宾从句)

The truth is that there is no standard American English at all. 事实是根本就没有所谓标准美国英语。(表语从句)

The belief that God created everything in the world is popular among the western countries. 上帝创造了世间万物的信仰在西方国家很普遍。(同位语从句，和 the belief 同位，表示抽象名词 belief 的具体内容)

I was under the impression that you would come the next day. 我当时以为你第二天会来。(同位语从句，和 the impression 同位，表示抽象名词 impression 的具体内容)

注意：同位语从句跟在一个抽象名词后面，表示该抽象名词的具体内容。这些抽象名词有 truth, fact, impression, belief, question, reply, answer, problem, news, plan, idea, thought, suggestion, advice, proposal 等)

(2) 疑问代词或副词 what / when / where / why / how / which / who / whom / whose / whether(引导动词宾从句可用 if 替代，其余情况不行)引导的名词性从句表示一个问题或一个事物。如 what...表示“...什么？”或“...的东西或事物”。What / which / who 在从句中作主、宾、表语，what / which 还可以作定语；whom 作宾语；whose 作定语；when / where / why / how 作状语；whether 不作成分。

What he cares about is money. 他所关心的东西是钱。(主语从句，what 作从句宾语)

That's what is being searched for. 那就是一直在找的东西。(表语从句, what 作从句主语)

This is what it is. 这就是它的真面目。(表语从句, what 作从句的表语)

Which (one) is the best is hard to say. 哪个最好很难说。(主语从句, which 作从句主语或定语)

I can't figure out why he has little chance of winning. 我不明白为什么他几乎没有胜出的机会。(宾语从句)

The problem is whether this method will save us time. 麻烦是(不知)这种方法能否节省我们的时间。

Whether they understand the significance of their choice matters a lot. 他们是否理解他们的选择的意义很重要。(主语从句)

The question whether we should enter this sport in the Games will be discussed. 我们是否应该在运动会中加入这个项目的问题会得到讨论。(同位语从句)

(3) as if / as though 可以引导表语从句, 不作从句成分。但不能省略。

It looks as if / as though the figures were real people. 看上去好像这些影像是真人一样。

(4) because 可以引导表语从句, 不作从句成分。如:

He is popular among girls. This is because he is handsome and has a good sense of humor. ..... 这是因为他帅气又很有幽默感。

注意这几个句型的区别: That / This is why+结果. 那/这就是为什么.....。

That / This is because+原因. 那 / 这是因为.....

The reason is that+原因. 原因就是.....

(5) who(m)ever / whatever / whichever 主要引导主语和宾语从句表示“任何.....的人”, “任何.....的东西”和“(在一个选择范围内)任意一个.....的东西”。Whoever / whatever / whichever 作从句主或宾语, whatever 和 whichever 还可做定语; whomever 只能作宾语。如:

Whatever (method) works will be utilized. 任何有效的东西(方法)都会利用起来。(主语从句, whatever 作从句主语或定语)

Accept whatever he offers. 他给什么都接受。(宾语从句, whatever 作从句宾语)

Whoever discouraged me regrets it now. 任何当时劝阻我的人现在都后悔了。(主语从句, whoever 作从句主语)

Who(m)ever they mentioned is a big shot. 他们提到的任何人都大人物。(主语从句, Whoever / whomever 做从句宾语)

I'll buy you whichever (present) you feel like. 你想要什么(礼物)我都会给你买。(宾语从句, whichever 作从句宾语或定语)

Whichever (topic) is about sex is forbidden. 任何和性有关的话题都不准涉及。(主语从句, whichever 作从句主语或定语)

### 3. 名词性从句注意点:

1) **That** 不起任何成分作用, 也没有意义; **what** 有意义, 表示“.....的东西”或“.....什么?”, 还作从句的主、宾表语。

2) **that** 引导的定语从句和同位语从句的差别:

两者由于前面都有一个名词短语, 所以容易混淆, 但:

(1) 意义差别: 同位语从句和前面的那个抽象名词短语是等价的, 同位语从句只不过是前者的具体内容。而定语从句是限制一个名词短语的身份或增添该名词短语的信息, 起修饰作用。

(2) **that** 功能差别: **that** 在同位语从句中不作成分, 只引导从句, 但不可省; 而定语从句中的 **that** 作从句的主、宾或表语, 作宾语时可省。

### 4. 练习

将下列划线部分改写成名词性从句, 不改变句意

(1) Things he phoned me about were not important at all.

(2) That's the place where we met for the first time.

(3) Anything that was said here should be kept secret.

(4) Anyone caught between their divorced parents knows how upsetting it can be.

(5) Explain to me the way you approach the President.

(6) That's the reason why the cloth absorbs water so quickly.

(7) He's been arrested by the police because he was found on drug.

(8) Your unexpected arrival made everybody nervous.

(9) I have heard about their wish to be aided by the international NGOs.

(10) My doubt about his age troubled me.

## (十四) IT 的用法和强调句

1. 代词 it: 见代词部分。

2. 形式主语 it

It 常作形式主语，把真正的主语置于句后，真正的主语通常为不定式短语、ing 分词短语和主语从句。如：

**It** is easy to buy a new radio. **It** is no use telling him that.

3. 形式宾语 it

It 作形式宾语，真实宾语放在宾语补足语后面，真实宾语通常为不定式，ing 分词和宾语从句。

常用句型：think / feel / find / consider / make...it + 名词短语宾补 / 形容词短语宾补等 + 不定式短语 / -ing 分词短语 / 宾从。如：

He felt **it** his duty to help others. They thought **it** no good doing that.

4. 强调句 it

1) 强调句概念和结构：强调句可以用来强调句中的主语部分、宾语和状语。结构为：

**It is (was) + 被强调部分 + that** (强调人可用 who/ whom 宾语)+(主语部分, 若被强调则没有) + 谓语部分+其它部分(若被强调则没有)。如：

A terrible car accident killed two people on that road a year ago. 可改成以下强调句：

**It was a terrible car accident that** killed two people on that road a year ago. (强调主语部分)

**It was on that road that** a terrible accident killed two people a year ago. (强调状语)

**It was two people that / who(m)** a terrible car accident killed on that road a year ago. (强调宾语)

被强调部分可以是(主语/宾语/状语)从句，如：

**It is where we usually meet on Sunday afternoons that** the head teacher will give us a talk. (强调状语从句)

2) 疑问句形式：

(1) 一般疑问句：Is / Was it + 被强调部分 + that / who(m)...?

(2) 特殊疑问句：where / when / How / Who / What...it / was it that / who(m)...? 如：

Was **it** a terrible accident **that** killed two people on that road a year ago?

What was it that killed two people on that road a year ago?

Where was it that a terrible accident killed two people a year ago?

3) 强调 not... until...状语部分的强调句:

not... until...状语部分的强调句是: It was / is not until...that...如:

He didn't get home until midnight. **It was** not until midnight **that** he got home.

He didn't get home until the rain had stopped. It was not until the rain had stopped that he got home.

5. 练习

1) 选择正确答案

(1) My bike is missing. I can't find \_\_\_\_\_ anywhere.

- A. one                      B. ones                      C. it                      D. that

(2) — Who's that?

— \_\_\_\_\_ Professor Li.

- A. That's                      B. It's                      C. He's                      D. This's

(3) \_\_\_\_\_ was Jane that I saw in the library this morning.

- A. It                      B. He                      C. She                      D. That

(4) — Have you ever seen a whale alive?

— Yes, I've seen \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. that                      B. it                      C. such                      D. one

(5) The color of my coat is different from \_\_\_\_\_ of yours.

- A. this                      B. that                      C. it                      D. one

(6) \_\_\_\_\_ will do you good to do some exercise every morning.

- A. It                      B. There                      C. Those                      D. You

(7) We think \_\_\_\_\_ our duty to pay taxes to our government.

- A. that                      B. this                      C. its                      D. it

(8) \_\_\_\_\_ four years since I joined the Army.

- A. There was                  B. There is                  C. It was                  D. It is

(9) How long \_\_\_\_\_ to finish the work?

- A. you'll take                          B. you'll take it  
C. will it take you                      D. will take you

(10) It was through Xiao Li \_\_\_\_\_ I got to know Xiao Wang.

- A. who                          B. whom                          C. how                          D. that

### 三、【学法指导】

语法学习法是关于学习词法、句法亦即研究词形、词义、词用、句式变化与英语表达法则的方法。学习英语语法必须与大量的语言实践相结合。

1. 对比法。在理论指导下借助母语进行翻译，对比汉英的异同点，自觉识记和理解英语语法规则，有计划地主动完成英汉互译和其它单项与综合练习，提高英语运用能力。无论英汉句都由词组成，各含名动形副介连及主谓宾定状补等基本成份。如下列 5 句：She only lost her knife. 她只丢了小刀。She lost only her knife. 她丢的只是她的小刀。She lost her only knife. 她丢了她的唯一的小刀。Only she lost her knife. 只有她丢了小刀。She lost her knife only. 她(只是)丢了小刀而已。这些英语句子与汉语语序是一致的，属自然语序。同时，通过对比也明确了副词 only 在句中的不同位置。

但是 So fast does he run that it is difficult for us to catch up with him. 这句的词法句法与汉语便不同了。借助翻译对比就提高了对英语特点或不同语体差异性的认识。

2. 归纳——演绎法。学习英语要善于归纳总结自己所碰到的各种语法现象，从中找出规律性的东西，即语法规则。自己的主动获取比被动接受效果要好得多。以连系动词为例：appear, be, keep, prove, remain, seem 一般有表“状语”或“性质”的功能；feel, look, smell, sound, taste 一般表“感觉”功能；become, get, go, grow, turn 一般表“转变”功能。又如汉语一词多译，以“睡觉”为例：sleep, sleep like a log, fall asleep, fall into a deep sleep, have a sleep, be asleep, go to sleep, get to sleep, be heavy with sleep, sleep a dead sleep, put sb. to sleep, put sb. to bed, be in bed, go to bed, nap, dead to the world 等。

但是，所有的语法规则自己都亲自总结归纳是不可能的，也是不必要的。我们可以先听老师讲解或自己阅读语法书，再做大量的练习材料，来巩固所学语法知识，这便是演绎法的运用。总之，归纳、演绎二法可单独使用，若结合使用，则效果更佳。

3. 整体学习与翻译并举法。总体地学词、句、文，领会语篇思想内容之后，即老师每教完一课之后，学生先将英译中，再合着书复写英文，以测学习成效，巩固对语法规则与佳作的记忆。

4. 练习法。学语言离不开语言实践，只有通过运用语言来学好语言。因此，有计划、有指导地进行语言练习是很重要的一环。



1) 句型转换操练法。有益的常练项目的：就划线提问；合并句子；复句、单句互换；主动语态、被动语态互换；直接引语、间接引语互换；自然语序、倒装语序互换；陈述句、感叹句互换；代换（活学活用同义近义反义词语）等。

2) 各种文体练习。

3) 养成每天接触英语的习惯。在母语环境里学外语最大的困难就是缺乏所学语言环境，因此，学英语要自创英语环境。如与他人用英语会话；经常观看或表演英语节目；学唱英语歌曲；收看或收听英语广播、电视节目；坚持用英语写日记，培养英语思维能力等。只要采取“听、记、说、写、译”任一方式均可。冰冻三尺，非一日之寒。

5. 语法规则记忆法。

机械记忆英语语法规则令人枯燥乏味。但是我们可以发挥奇特的联想，巧妙的组合，使之饶有趣味，或朗朗上口。

例一：以-f、-fe 结尾的名词变复数改-f、-fe 为 v 再加 es 的十三个单词如下：wife, elf; shelf, loaf, self; knife, thief, wolf; half, sheaf, leaf, calf, life。记忆口诀：  
妻子是个小精灵，架上面包自己蒸，小刀刺向贼和狼，半捆树叶救牛命。

例二：只接不定式作宾语，不接动名词的动词有：“Merdowphal”，音译“磨豆腐喽！”其中：  
m—manage, mean(打算); e—expect; r—refuse; d—dare, desire, determine, decide, demand; o—offer; w—want, wish; p—promise, pretend, plan; h—hope; a—ask, agree, arrange; l—long, learn。

例三：美国有种说法，凡是 megafeps(霉咖啡不食)动词，其后都要跟动名词作宾语。即：  
mind, enjoy, give up, avoid, finish, escape, practise 和 suggest。

例四：宾语从句用虚拟语气即“(should)+动原”的动词  
一个坚持(insist)，两个命令(command, order)，三个建议(advise, propose, suggest)，四个要求(ask, demand, require, request)。

例五：巧记以 o 结尾的名词变复数

Seveal Negroes invited the two heroes to eat tomatoes and Potatoes except pianos, photos, bamboos and radios.

例六：感叹句用法口诀

感叹句并不难，what 或 how 放句前。

how 后跟有形或副，what 之后名词连。

主谓顺序不可变，省略它们也常见。

例七：多个形容词修饰同一名词的顺序，美国人总结为：“Osacomu(奥赛考没有？)+名词中心词”

o—opinion 品质；s—size 大小/shape 形状；a—age 年龄；c—colour 颜色；o—origin 出处；  
m—material 材料；u—use 用途。

例八：当主语是物时，主动态表被动态的动词口诀

开关分卖始抽烟，读写讲印有进展，

清理系钩保留锯，洗烫通风吹充填，

改进照相演出亮，增加结数锁磨穿，

烹吃全凭感官连。

口诀所指动词如下：open, close, divide into, begin, smoke, read, write, tell, print, work out, clean, do up, catch, keep, saw, wash iron, draw, blow, fill,



improve, photograph, act, light up, add up, tie, count, lock, wear, cook, eat 和感官连系动词: feel, look, smell, taste, sound 等。

例九: 非谓语动词作表语用法特点

一交换: 将主表交换位置, 句意仍不变。

Her wish is to become a teacher = To become a teacher is her wish.

二对应: 主表同为动名词或同为不定式。

Seeing is believing.或 To see is to believe.

三表状态和特性: 分词作表语表示主语所处的状态或特性。

The report was so inspiring that they were all excited.

(inspiring 表 report 之特性; excited 表 they 所处之状态。)

例十: UP 和 DOWN 用法对联

高上北城入(up)

低下南乡出(down)

说明: run up the hill 跑上山, run down the hill 跑下山, sail up the river 向上游驶去, sail down the river 向下游驶去, fly up north 向北飞, fly down south 往南飞, go up to Beijing 去北京, go down to the country 下乡, go up to Oxford 上牛津大学, go down from Oxford 离开牛津。

湖南省教育厅版权所有  
www.hunandedu.net

## 写作部分

一、【学习目标】按照《普通高中英语课程标准（实验）》中的要求制定该部分的学习目标：培养学生书面表达能力。

能用文字及图表提供的信息进行简单描述；能写出通知、信件等常见体裁的应用文；能描述人物或事件，并进行简单的评论；能根据材料填写简单的表格。

二、【要点解读】情景作文题考查学生初步的书面表达能力。意在要求平时指导学生写作时，写作题立意要尽量与语言实际使用情形一致，写作提示要尽可能具有开放性，体现“用英语做事”，引导学生表达真情实感，再现生活经历，描述周围的人和物，表达意见、观点，特别是要表达真实意义或个人经验。整体内容要简洁、明了；建议要合情合理，条理清晰，重点突出；可以用连接词保持文章的连贯性。本题是开放性主观题。解这类题的方法一般是认真阅读写作提示，掌握其要求，然后根据要求写出文章。本题能力层级为综合运用，难度预估值为 0.75。

### 三、【学法指导】

（一）了解高中必修模块各种常见体裁应用文的格式

#### 1. Notice 通知(Book 1,P.16-P.17)

英语的通知分为两类，即口头通知和书面通知。

口头通知一般不用写题目，也不必写出通知的时间。发布口头通知首先要说明被通知的对象，在正文前面有称呼语且顶左格写，如：“Ladies and gentlemen”，“Boys and girls”等。为了引起听者的注意，需另起行不顶格写一些引人注目的话，如“Be quiet, please!”, “May I have your attention?”, “Attention, please!”等。口头通知还要有结束语，如用 That’s all 表示通知到此为止。通知的结尾还可以用 Thank you 以表示礼貌。

书面通知一般用 Notice 作为标题，通常写在正文上方的正中间位置。正文是通知的主体部分，包括通知的对象、事由、时间、地点等，多用书面语、祈使句和将来时态，既要简明扼要，又要准确无误。常见格式：

Notice	
正文	发通知的单位

日期
----

**2. Letter 书信(Book 1,P.38-P.39; Book 5,P.17;P.56-P.57;P.97)**

英文书信分为私人书信(Personal letters)和业务书信(Business letters)。

书信一般包括五个部分: 信头(Heading)、称呼(Salutation)、正文(Body of the letter)、结束语(Complimentary close)、签名(Signature)。常见格式:

	写信人地址
	写信日期
收信人地址	
称呼	
正文	
结尾语	
	谦称
	签名

写信人地址和收信人地址的书写顺序与汉语相反,即由小到大。私人信件一般不写收信人地址。

**3. E-mail(Book 2,P.36-P.37)**

首先,必须要在标题(Heading)栏的“收件人(To)”框中输入收信人的E-mail地址。“主题(Subject)”框的内容应简明地概括信的内容,短的可以是一个单词,如greetings;长的可以是一个名词性短语,也可以是完整句,但长度一般不超过35个字母。“主题”框的内容切忌含糊不清。

E-mail一般使用非正式的书信文体,因此正文前的称呼通常无须使用诸如“Dear Mr. John”之类的表达。在同辈的亲朋好友或同事间可以直呼其名,但对长辈或上级最好使用头衔加上姓。如:Tommy或者Mr. Smith。

E-mail文体的另外一个特点是简单明了,便于阅读,太长的内容可以以附件的方式发出。一个段落大多仅由一到三个句子组成。信尾客套话通常也很简明。常常只须一个词,如:“Thanks”,“Best”,“Cheers”,不需要用一般信函中的“Sincerely yours”或“Best regards”。

**4. Diary 日记(Book 2,P.101)**

日记就是记所做过的有趣的或有意义的事,动词多用过去时。常见格式:

星期	月, 日	天气(如: Sunny)
----	------	--------------

正文

天气的写法有: fine/sunny/clear, rainy, windy, snowy, cloudy 等。

### 5. Speech 发言稿(Book 3,P.36-P.37)

发言稿一般由称呼语、正文和结束语三部分组成, 开头和结尾有固定格式, 写正文时观点要鲜明, 条理要清楚, 语言要简洁明快。常见格式:

Good morning, everyone!

The topic of my speech today is ....

正文

Thank you for your listening.

### 6. Poster 海报(Book 5,P.37)

海报主要涉及比赛、影讯和演出, 正中先写 Poster, 然后把内容作为大字标题, 如: “Football Match”, “ Film News” 等。正文部分要写清具体内容、活动时间、地点, 以及参加的规定、主持或举办单位等, 时常配以绘画。出海报的单位署名在右下角, 日期位于署名的下一行, 靠左下角。海报示例:

Poster

Friendly Basketball Match

A basketball match will be held between Class 491 and Class 495 of Senior Grade 2 at 5:00 p.m. on Wednesday, November, 18<sup>th</sup> on the school playground. All are warmly welcome.

The School Student Union

Monday, November, 16<sup>th</sup>

### (二) 高中必修模块各种常见体裁应用文一些常见的句式

1. 书面通知的结束语常常有: Please attend it on time. Don't be late. Everyone is welcome to take part in it.

2. 英文书信和 e-mail 的开头语有: Thank you so much for your letter/ gift/e-mail. Glad to receive your letter/e-mail of May, 15<sup>th</sup>. Sorry to have written back to you so late because.... I'm writing to ask about.... I'm writing to tell you something about....

英文书信的结束语写在正文的下方, 另起一行。常见的结束语有: Best wishes/regards! Good luck to you! Wish you success/good luck! Give my best wishes/regards to...! Looking forward to your early reply! Do write to me when you have time!

谦称的第一个字母要大写,最后要加逗号。常用的谦称有: Yours; Yours truly; Yours ever; Yours lovingly; Yours faithfully; Yours respectfully; Yours sincerely.

3. 发言稿开头的常用语: I'm very glad to introduce myself to you. Good morning/afternoon/evening, everyone/ladies and gentlemen. The topic of my speech today is....

结尾的常用语: That's all. Thank you. Thank you for your listening.

4. 海报的常用语: Come and cheer for them. All are warmly welcome. Tickets, 10 yuan for each. Admission free.

### (三) 中学生写作中常见的错误

有相当一部分中学生在写作时因审题不严会导致人称错误、要点遗漏、格式错误,还会在拼写和语法方面犯错误。

1. 拼写错误。如: come true(√), come ture(×); believe(√), belive(×); first(√), frist(×)。

2. 时态错误。如: We haven't seen each other since you go to the USA. (应为 went)。

3. 语态错误。如: We watched the train till it was disappeared. (应去掉 was)。

4. 用词错误。I hope you have a good time everyday. (应为 every day)

5. 非谓语动词错误。 Play computer games will waste your time. (应为 Playing)。

6. 语句结构混乱。 There are 80% of the classmates agreed with me. (应去掉 There are)。

### (四) 巧用连接词

要想使文章有整体性、连贯性,就要学会正确使用连接词表示罗列、增加。英语作文常用连接词如下:

First, second, third;

First, then, next, after that, next, finally;

For one thing ... for another...;

On (the) one hand...on the other hand;

Besides, What's more, In addition, Furthermore, Moreover, Another, also;

Especially, In particular.

表示时间顺序

now, at present, recently, after, afterwards, after that, after a while, in a few days, at first, in the beginning, to begin with, later, next, finally, immediately, soon, suddenly, all of a sudden, at that moment, as soon as, the moment, from now on, from then on, at the same time, meanwhile, till, not...until, before, after, when, while, as during.

表示解释说明

now, in addition, for example, for instance, in this case, moreover, furthermore, in fact, actually. ,

表示转折关系

but, however, while, though, or, otherwise, on the contrary, on the other hand, in contrast, despite, in spite of, even though, except (for), instead, of course, after all.

表示并列关系

or, and, also, too, not only ... but also, as well as, both... and, either ...or, neither...nor.

表示因果关系

because, because of, since, now that, as, thanks to..., due to..., therefore, as a result (of), otherwise, so...that, such...that.

表示条件关系

as (so) long as, on condition that, if, unless.

表示让步关系

though, although, as, even if, even though, whether ...or..., however, whoever, whatever, whichever, wherever, whenever, no matter how (who, what, which, where, when, whom).

表示举例

for example, for instance, such as..., take... for example.

表示比较

be similar to, similarly, the same as, in contrast, compared with (to)..., just like, just as.

表示目的

for this reason, for this purpose, so that, in order to, so as to.

表示强调

in deed, in fact, surely, certainly, no doubt, without any doubt, truly, obviously, above all.

表示概括归纳

in a word, in short, in brief, on the whole, generally speaking, in my opinion, as far as I know, as we all know, as has been stated, as I have shown, finally, at last, in summary, in conclusion.

## （五）掌握写作技巧

### 1. 注意篇章结构，合理布局

开始部分（opening paragraph）——说出文中的要点、核心问题。

正文部分（Body paragraphs）——围绕主题开展叙述、讨论。

结尾部分（concluding paragraphs）——对全文的总结和概括。

要做到全文中心突出、段落之间必须是有机的地联系，内容完整、连贯。前后呼应，祛除与主题无关的内容。

### 2. 确定主题句

主题句是对全文的概括，是文章的主旨。它能在文章中起到“画龙点睛”的作用。通常主题句出现在一篇文章的开头，而后，全文对主题句所提出的内容进行解释，扩展。

写主题句应注意以下几点：

- 1) 归纳出你要写的文章的几个要点；
- 2) 提炼出一句具有概括性的话；
- 3) 主题句应具有可读性，抓住、吸引读者。

## （六）使用较丰富的句式

长短句、从句和简单句等的交替使用能够使文章更加形象、生动。

### (七) 检查、修改以及规范书写等

## 四、【习题训练】

### 1. Notice 练习

假如你是班长，请你用英语通知你班同学本周星期六晚上 7:30 在本班教室举行一次英语晚会，节目有唱歌、朗诵、讲故事、话剧等，要求本班同学都参加，欢迎外班同学光临，请同学们做好准备。词数 80 左右。

### 2. Letter 练习

假如你是李平，你的好友王华最近病倒了，请你给他写封信安慰他，并给他提一些建议。词数 100 左右。

### 3. E-mail 练习

你的英国朋友 Tom 给你发来 e-mail，告知你他将来青岛度假，请你用英语给他发 e-mail 回信。词数 100 左右。

### 4. Diary 练习

用日记的形式表达你在 10 月 28 日（星期二）那天发生的情况：你早饭后准备上学，发现一建筑物着火，立刻报火警，结果上课迟到了。词数 100 左右。

### 5. Speech 练习

你们班上举行一次讨论会，讨论如何交友，请你以“**How to make friends**”为题写一篇英文演讲稿，词数 100 左右。

## 模拟试卷一

本试卷由试题卷和答题卡两部分组成。试卷分四个部分，共 10 页。时量 120 分钟。满分 100 分。所有试题均须在答题卡上作答。

### 第一部分：听力技能（共两节，满分 20 分）

做听力部分时，请先在试题卷上作答。听力部分结束前，你将有两分钟的时间将第 1 至第 17 小题的答案转涂到答题卡上，将第 18 至 20 小题的答案转写到答题卡上。

#### 第一节 听力理解（共 17 小题；每小题 1 分，满分 17 分）

听下面 9 段对话。每段对话后有一个或一个以上小题，从题中所给的 A、B、C 三个选项选出最佳选项，并标在试题卷的相应位置。听每段对话前，你将有时间阅读各个小题，每小题 5 秒钟；听完后，各小题将给出 5 秒钟的作答时间。每段对话读两遍。

例 听下面一段对话，回答第 1 小题。

1. How much is the shirt?

A. £ 19.15.

B. £9.15.

C. £9.18.

答案是 B。

听下面一段对话，回答第 1 小题。

1. What are the speakers talking about?

A. Exam results.

B. Time for the exam.

C. Change of class hours.

听下面一段对话，回答第 2 小题。

2. What would probably happen?

A. Michael will go to the meeting.

B. Michael will stay at home.

C. Michael will go to school.

听下面一段对话，回答第 3 小题。

3. What does the man mean?

A. He drinks tea before lunch.

B. He prefers coffee to tea.



C. He drinks coffee after lunch.

听下面一段对话，回答第 4 小题。

4. When will the train leave?

A. At 12:15.

B. At 12:45.

C. At 12:30.

听下面一段对话，回答第 5 小题。

5. Why doesn't the man wear his jacket?

A. He lost it.

B. He didn't feel cold.

C. The jacket was too old.

听下面一段对话，回答第 6 至第 8 三个小题。

6. Who is the woman?

A. Mr. Green's secretary.

B. Mr. Smith's secretary.

C. An operator.

7. When will Mr. Green come to Tokyo?

A. In the last week of October.

B. In the middle of November.

C. At the beginning of December.

8. How long will the conference last?

A. A week.

B. 3 days.

C. 5 days.

听下面一段对话，回答第 9 至第 11 三个小题。

9. Where are they probably talking?

A. In a restaurant.

B. At a bus stop.

C. By the river.

10. How long has the woman waited?

A. About ten minutes

B. A few hours.

C. Since last year.

11. What are they mainly talking about?

A. Bus service.

B. Heavy snow.

C. Weather report.

听下面一段对话，回答第 12 至第 14 三个小题。

12. Where does the conversation most probably take place?

A. At a seafood shop.

B. In a dining hall.

C. On the phone.

13. What do we know about the restaurant?

- A. It is famous for seafood.
- B. It seldom accepts large parties.
- C. Famous people often come there.

14. What can we learn from the conversation?

- A. The restaurant is by the sea.
- B. Seafood is very popular nowadays.
- C. Regular customers have advantages there.

听下面一段对话，回答第 15 至第 17 三个小题。

15. Where do the speakers have the conversation?

- A. At a taxi stand.
- B. At a bus-stop.
- C. At a gas station.

16. How much will the man pay?

- A. \$9.95.
- B. \$19.95.
- C. \$29.95.

17. What's the change?

- A. \$30.05.
- B. \$30.15.
- C. \$20.05.

第二节 笔录要点（共 3 小题；每小题 1 分，满分 3 分）

听下面一段材料，将第 18 至 20 小题的信息补充完整，每小题不超过三个单词。听材料前，你将有时间阅读各小题，每小题 5 秒钟；听完后，各小题将给出 15 秒钟的作答时间。本段材料读两遍。

Information about the trip

Destination(目的地)	18
Means of transportation(交通)	19
Time needed for the trip	over four hours
Place to meet	at the school gate
Time to meet	at 20

第二部分 知识运用（共两节，满分 20 分）

第一节 单项填空 (共 10 小题; 每小题 1 分, 满分 10 分)

从 A、B、C、D 四个选项中, 选出可以填入空白处的最佳选项, 并在答题卡上将该项涂黑。

例: It is generally considered unwise to give a child \_\_\_\_\_ he or she wants.

- A. however                      B. whatever                      C. whichever                      D. whenever

答案是 B。

21. Mr. Li is \_\_\_\_\_ chairman of the meeting.

- A. a                      B. the                      C. /                      D. an

22. I am afraid Mrs. Liu won't quite \_\_\_\_\_ of you being here.

- A. approve                      B. inform                      C. agree                      D. instead

23. With his work \_\_\_\_\_, he went home happily.

- A. finishing                      B. to finish                      C. finished                      D. had finished

24. She had three sons, and all \_\_\_\_\_ became doctors.

- A. who                      B. whose                      C. of them                      D. of whom

25. The little girl couldn't work the problem out. She wasn't \_\_\_\_\_ clever.

- A. that                      B. much                      C. enough                      D. too

26. Only after you have reached eighteen, \_\_\_\_\_ join the army.

- A. you can                      B. can you                      C. will you                      D. you will

27. \_\_\_\_\_ of the truth of the report, he told his colleagues about it.

- A. Convinced                      B. Convincing                      C. To convince                      D. Having convinced

28. Don't worry, you \_\_\_\_\_ get the tickets for the game soon.

- A. can                      B. should                      C. shall                      D. must

29. The wet weather will continue tomorrow when a cold front \_\_\_\_\_ to arrive.

- A. is expected                      B. is expecting                      C. expects                      D. will be expected

30. —You don't seem to be quite yourself today. What's wrong?

—Oh, I'm suffering from a cold. Nothing serious, \_\_\_\_.

- A. yet                      B. indeed                      C. though                      D. anyway

第二节 完形填空 （共 10 小题；每小题 1 分，满分 10 分）

阅读下面短文，掌握其大意，然后从第 31 至第 40 小题所给的 A、B、C、D 四个选项中，选出最佳选项，并在答题卡上将该项涂黑。

Years ago, I lived in a building in a large city. The building next door was 31 a few feet away from mine. There was a woman who lived there, whom I had never met, yet I could see her seated by her 32 each afternoon, sewing or reading.

33 several months had gone by, I began to notice that her window was dirty. Everything was 34 through the dirty window. I would say to myself, "I wonder why that woman doesn't wash her window. It really looks terrible."

One bright morning I 35 to clean my flat, including washing the window on the inside.

Late in the afternoon when I finished the cleaning, I sat down by the window with a cup of coffee for a rest. What a surprise! 36 the way, the woman sitting by her window was clearly visible. Her window was clean!

Then it dawned on me. I had been 37 her dirty window, but all the time I was watching hers through my own dirty window.

That was quite an important 38 for me. How often had I looked at and criticized others through the dirty window of my 39, through my own shortcomings?

Since then, whenever I wanted to 40 someone, I asked myself first, "Am I looking at him through my own dirty window?"

Then I try to clean the window of my own world so that I may see the world about me more clearly.

- |               |            |            |             |
|---------------|------------|------------|-------------|
| 31. A. just   | B. only    | C. even    | D. still    |
| 32. A. window | B. door    | C. house   | D. table    |
| 33. A. Before | B. Because | C. While   | D. After    |
| 34. A. dirty  | B. unclear | C. ugly    | D. funny    |
| 35. A. wanted | B. managed | C. decided | D. promised |
| 36. A. Across | B. In      | C. Through | D. By       |

37. A. watching                      B. criticizing                      C. looking                      D. observing
38. A. lesson                      B. thing                      C. day                      D. story
39. A. eyes                      B. mind                      C. thought                      D. heart
40. A. help                      B. trouble                      C. judge                      D. dislike

### 第三部分 阅读技能（共三节；满分 35 分）

#### 第一节 阅读理解（共 12 小题；每小题 2 分，满分 24 分）

阅读下列短文，从每题所给的 A、B、C、D 四个选项中，选出最佳选项，并在答题卡上将该项涂黑。

#### A

Houses and Apartments to Let	
<p>House—Widestreet</p> <p>Four-bedroom townhouse on Hillside. Two washrooms, large kitchen, Two garages and a garden at the back of the house.</p> <p>Near bus station and train station.</p> <p>Telephone 044-2395-566</p>	<p>Apartment—Longroad</p> <p>Three-bedroom apartment on the first floor of a modern building. Small garden. City center 20 minutes by train.</p> <p>Telephone 030-4995-021</p> <p>after 6:30 pm.</p>
<p>House—Lowlandroad</p> <p>Three bed rooms upstairs, big sitting room, two bathrooms and a big kitchen, large garden in the front. Near bus stop.</p> <p>Tel: 062-9957-341</p> <p>Mr. Lee</p> <p>Thursday</p>	<p>Apartment—Ringingroad</p> <p>One-bedroom apartment. Fourth floor. Quiet.</p> <p>Small sitting room, small kitchen, small bathroom. Near bus stop and supermarket.</p> <p>Tel: 029-8824-656</p> <p>Monday to Friday</p>
<p>Apartment—near University</p> <p>Two-bedroom, each has a private bathroom, small kitchen. Good for two students to share.</p> <p>Tel: 022-3968-121</p> <p>before 4:30    Sunday</p>	<p>Apartment—town center</p> <p>Bedroom, Large sitting room, small kitchen and bathroom. Good bus and train services to any part of town.</p> <p>Tel: 065-9875-002</p>

41. Mike's grandpa is over seventy; which of the following would they probably not choose?

A. Widestreet.                      B. Longroad.                      C. Lowlandroad.                      D. Ringingroad.

42. Tom's father owns two cars, and he wants to rent a place to live; Which number would he probably dial?

A. 044-2395-566.                      B. 062-9957-341.                      C. 022-3968-121.                      D. 065-9875-002.

43. Two students want to share an apartment, and what time can they make a call?

A. After 6:30, on Sunday.                      B. On Thursday.  
C. On Monday to Friday.                      D. Before 4:30, on Sunday.

44. Phillip is a young writer. He would like to leave his parents and live alone. But he doesn't have much money. So he will need \_\_\_\_\_.

A. a house in Widestreet                      B. an apartment in town center  
C. an apartment in Longroad                      D. an apartment in Ringingroad

## B

Christmas was coming. Jamie and Ted had already begun to write long letters to Santa Claus. But boys asked him for the same things. Each little letter ended with ---"Just like Brother's."

They agreed to ask for only one sled. They would rather ride together.

One night, after they had gone to bed, Jamie said, "Ted, if Santa Claus brings us skates, Jim can teach us how to use them."

"Oh, yes." Jamie answered.

Ted went on: "I'll always ride the sled down a hill, and you can ride it up."

"I guess you won't," Jamie said loudly.

"Why not?" Ted asked.

"Because it'll be as much my sled as yours."

"Yes, of course," Ted replied; "but I chose it first."

"You are a selfish boy!" said Jamie.

"Well, then, so are you!"

"I don't care. I won't sleep with you. I'll ask mamma if I can't have the first pick," roared Jamie, bounding out of bed.

"You're a big, cross cry baby," Ted shouted, jumping out after his brother.

Away they ran to mamma. Both were angry.

Mamma was sad. She kissed their hot faces. She told them how their naughty words hurt her. She showed them how displeased God was to see two little brothers quarrel.

That night they went to sleep in each other's arms.

Christmas morning came at last. Very early the boys crept out of bed, just to "feel" their stockings.

Each little red stocking was full from toe to top. Boxes and paper parcels were piled around them. Such a good time! It seemed as if all their letters had been answered.

Suddenly Jamie cried, "O Ted, here's a letter!"

They put their little heads together, and spelled this out:

*"My dear Boys,—No sled this year. It quarreled so I was afraid to bring it. I dropped it off the load about a week ago. Get ready for it next year. Merry Christmas!"*

SANTA CLAUS

45. From the beginning of the story, we can know that \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. the two brothers had good relationship
- B. the two brothers asked for different things
- C. Jim was their elder brother
- D. The two brothers slept in different room

46. Why did the brothers quarrel?

- A. Because they had different opinion about how to spend Christmas.
- B. Because they had got different gifts from Santa Clause.
- C. Because they could not ride the sled together.
- D. Because each of them wanted to ride the sled down a hill.

47. What was the result of the quarrel?

- A. Jamie won the quarrel.
- B. Both of them got punished.
- C. Both of them got their Christmas gift.

D. They made peace.

48. What does the underlined word "it" in the last paragraph refer to?

- A. The sled.      B. The letter.      C. The stocking.      D. The box.

### C

One of the best ways to protect yourself and other people from getting sick is to wash your hands with soap. To make soap, you need three main things: oil, water and lye (碱水).

The oil can come from animal fat or plant sources like avocado, coconut or sunflower. Lye can be found at markets and other stores that sell cleaning products. Lye is also called sodium hydroxide or potassium hydroxide.

Be very careful. Lye can cause serious burns. It can also blind a person if it gets into the eyes. Do not breathe lye and do not let small children near it. And do not store lye in containers made of aluminum. The lye will eat through the metal.

But the owner of a soap making business in California says that there is no lye present in the finished soap. Diane Longacre says the lye and oil molecules combine and chemically change into soap and glycerin.

Some people make soap with potash (碳酸钾) lye. You boil ashes in water until only dry black salts remain. Once the salts melt, a gray-white substance is left. This is potash.

One simple way to make soft soap requires nine kilograms of potash. You also need twelve kilos of any kind of oil and twenty-six liters of water. Mix the potash well with the water. Add it to the oil in a wooden bucket.

For the next three days, mix the materials well with a wooden stick or spoon. Do this several times a day for about three minutes at a time. Then let the soap sit in the wooden bucket for about a month. After that, it will be ready to use.

49. Why does the writer warn us not to let small children near lye?

- A. Because lye can burn easily.  
B. Because lye can blind a person.  
C. Because lye can make a person catch a cold.  
D. Because lye can eat through the metal.

50. According to Diane Longacre, which of the following is right?



- A. Soap consists of three things: oil, water and lye.
- B. In the process of making soap, only chemical change occurs.
- C. Glycerin is a kind of substance harmful to people.
- D. In the process of making soap, lye is changed into other substances.

51. What are the right steps of making soap with potash?

- A. boil ashes in water--- mix the potash well with the water---add the mixture to oil--- mix the materials well
- B. boil ashes in water--- mix the potash well with oil ---add the mixture to the water --- mix the materials well
- C. mix potash well with water --- boil ashes in the water ---add the mixture to oil--- mix the materials well
- D. mix potash well with water---add the mixture to oil--- boil ashes in the water---mix the materials well

52. The best title of this passage is \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. How to Make Soap
- B. How to Protect from Lye
- C. Things Needed to Make Soap
- D. Just Do-it-yourself

第二节 回答问题（共 3 小题；每小题 2 分，满分 6 分）

阅读下面短文，根据第 53 至第 55 小题的具体要求，简要回答问题，并将答案转写到答题卡上。

On a very cold evening in northern Virginia many years ago, an old man was waiting for a ride across the river. Anxiously, he watched as several horsemen passed by, then another. Finally, the last rider came to the place where the old man sat. As this one drew near, the old man caught the rider's eyes and said, "Sir, would you mind giving an old man a ride to the other side?"

Reining (勒住缰绳) his horse, the rider replied, "Sure." Seeing the old man was unable to lift his half-frozen body from the ground, the rider got off the horse and helped the old man onto it. He took the old man not only across the river, but also to his house, which was just a few miles away.

As they came to his house, the rider's curiosity caused him to ask the old man, "Sir, I noticed that you let several other riders pass by without asking for help. Then I came up and you immediately asked me for a ride. What would happen if I had refused and left you there?"

The old man lowered himself slowly down from the horse, looked the rider straight in the eyes and replied, "I've been there for some time. I think I know people well. I looked into the eyes of the other riders and immediately saw there was no worry about my situation. It would have been useless even to ask them for a ride. But when I looked into your eyes, I saw kindness and compassion (同情). I knew you would give me a hand."

Those words moved the rider deeply. He said to the old man, "I am very grateful for what you have said. May I never get too busy with my own things that I fail to help others with kindness and compassion."

53. Use two words to describe the last rider.

54. Why did the old man let several other riders pass by without asking for help? (回答词数不超过 10 个)

55. By saying "May I never get too busy with my own things that I fail to help others with kindness and compassion.", what did he mean? (回答词数不超过 15 个)

第三节 摘录信息 (共 5 小题; 每小题 1 分, 满分 5 分)

阅读下面短文, 根据所读内容在文后第 56 至第 60 小题的空格里填上适当的单词或短语, 并将答案转写到答题卡上。

注意: 每空不超过 3 个单词。

The tradition of birthday parties started a long time ago. There are some traditions that you can find almost anywhere, anytime, such as sending birthday cards, blowing out the candles on a birthday cake and singing the 'Happy Birthday' song. Others are only found for certain ages and in certain countries.

In China, on a child's second birthday, family members put many things on the floor around the child. According to Chinese tradition, the first thing that the child picks up tells you what profession the child will choose later in life.

For Japanese children, the third, fifth and seventh birthdays are especially important. At this age, there is a special celebration *Shichi-Go-San* (seven, five, three in Japanese) when children go to the temple wearing a new *kimono* (和服). The *priest* (僧侣) gives them special sweets, and the parents usually organize a party for their friends in their home.

In Argentina, Mexico and several other Latin American countries, girls have a special birthday celebration when they reach the age of fifteen. After a special *ceremony* (仪式), the girls dance a waltz with their father and other boys.

Eighteen is the traditional 'coming of age'— the age when (in many countries) you have the right to vote, join the army and (in Britain) drink alcohol or buy a house.

In many English-speaking countries, a twenty-first birthday cake often has a key on top, or the cake itself is sometimes in the shape of a key. The key means that the young person is now old enough to leave and enter the family home at any time they want to!

**Title: 56**

Places	Special age	Ways to observe
China	two	Children pick up something.
Japan	Three, five and seven	Children go to the temple in 59. Parents organize a party.
Latin American countries	58	Girls dance a waltz with their father and other boys.
57	eighteen	
English-speaking countries	Twenty-first	The cake often has 60 on top.

#### 第四部分 写作技能（共两节，满分 25 分）

##### 第一节 完成译文（共 5 小题；每小题 2 分，满分 10 分）

根据中文原文完成下列各英文译文，将答案填写到答题卡上。（每空限填一个词）

61. 他冒着生命危险去拯救地震中的小孩。

He took the risk \_\_\_\_\_ his life to save the children in the earthquake.

62. 丢失的钱包任何地方都找不着。

The missing wallet is \_\_\_\_\_ be found.

63. 这样的辞典一本就够了。

\_\_\_\_\_ dictionary is enough.

64. 他去法国的目的是度假

He went to Paris for the \_\_\_\_\_ spending holidays.

65. 这个假日被坏天气给破坏了。

The holiday \_\_\_\_\_ by the bad weather.

第二节 情景作文（共 1 小题，满分 15 分）

以 “The Importance of Water” 为题，用英语写一篇 100 词左右的短文，要点如下：

1. 水与生命的关系；
2. 水越来越缺乏；
3. 水的污染很严重；
4. 为了保护水资源，必须采取措施。

模拟试卷二

本试卷由试题卷和答题卡两部分组成。试卷分四个部分，共 10 页。时量 120 分钟。满分 100 分。所有试题均须在答题卡上作答。

第一部分：听力技能（共两节，满分 20 分）

做听力部分时，请先在试题卷上作答。听力部分结束前，你将有两分钟的时间将第 1 至第 17 小题的答案转涂到答题卡上，将第 18 至 20 小题的答案转写到答题卡上。

第一节 听力理解（共 17 小题；每小题 1 分，满分 17 分）

听下面 9 段对话。每段对话后有一个或一个以上小题，从题中所给的 A、B、C 三个选项选出最佳选项，并标在试题卷的相应位置。听每段对话前，你将有时间阅读各个小题，每小题 5 秒钟；听完后，各小题将给出 5 秒钟的作答时间。每段对话读两遍。

例 听下面一段对话，回答第 1 小题。

1. How much is the shirt?

- A. £ 19.15.                      B. £9.15.                      C. £9.18.

答案是 B。

听下面一段对话，回答第 1 小题。

1. Where does the conversation most probably take place?

- A. In a clothing store.                      B. At the woman's home.                      C. In the hospital.

听下面一段对话，回答第 2 小题。

2. What does the man mean?

- A. He doesn't like Japanese food.    B. He doesn't want to eat out.    C. He wants to pay.

听下面一段对话，回答第 3 小题。

3. What can we know about the woman?

- A. She has just changed her job.    B. She has just taken a new job.    C. She likes her job.

听下面一段对话，回答第 4 小题。

4. What did the woman want to do?

- A. To celebrate her own birthday.  
B. To give Tom a present for his birthday.  
C. To come to Tom's birthday party.

听下面一段对话，回答第 5 小题。

5. What do we know from the conversation?

- A. Something is wrong with the woman's telephone.  
B. Something is wrong with the man's telephone.  
C. Something is wrong with the woman's TV set.

听下面一段对话，回答第 6 至第 8 三个小题。

6. What are the two speakers talking about?

- A. The woman's school.    B. The woman's plan.    C. The woman's family.

7. What is the attitude of the woman's parents towards her choice?

- A. They are proud of it.    B. They are against it.    C. They don't care about it.

8. What will the woman most probably do in the end?

- A. She will become a painter.  
B. She will become an actress.  
C. She will become a singer.

听下面一段对话，回答第 9 至第 11 三个小题。

9. What is the man's problem?

- A. He doesn't like his job now.

B. He isn't satisfied with his salary.

C. He can't decide whether to take the job.

10. How much is the pay for an hour's job?

A. \$3.15.

B. \$3.50.

C. \$3.05.

11. What is the woman's suggestion?

A. Try to find a better job.

B. Give up this chance.

C. Take this temporary (暂时的) job first.

听下面一段对话，回答第 12 至第 14 三个小题。

12. Where is the woman from?

A. Chicago.

B. New York.

C. Paris.

13. Where does the man come from?

A. America.

B. Britain.

C. Canada.

14. What makes the man feel puzzled?

A. The time they met before.

B. The place where the woman comes from.

C. The map of the west of New York.

听下面一段对话，回答第 15 至第 17 三个小题。

15. Why does the woman call the man according to the conversation?

A. To discuss the guitar lessons of her friend's son.

B. To ask about guitar lessons.

C. To ask about piano lessons.

16. Which class does the woman want to take?

A. A group class on Wednesdays.

B. A private (私人的) class on Tuesdays.

C. A private class on Thursdays.

17. How much would the woman pay for one week's lessons?

A. \$4.

B. \$ 8.

C. \$ 12.

第二节 笔录要点 (共 3 小题; 每小题 1 分, 满分 3 分)

听下面一段材料, 将第 18 至 20 小题的信息补充完整, 每小题不超过三个单词。听材料前, 你将有时间阅读各小题, 每小题 5 秒钟; 听完后, 各小题将给出 15 秒钟的作答时间。本段材料读两遍。

The school opens at 18.

The 19 job is unpopular,

Children finish their work at 20 p.m.

**第二部分 知识运用 (共两节, 满分 20 分)**

第一节 单项填空 (共 10 小题; 每小题 1 分, 满分 10 分)

从 A、B、C、D 四个选项中, 选出可以填入空白处的最佳选项, 并在答题卡上将该项涂黑。

例: It is generally considered unwise to give a child        he or she wants.

A. however

B. whatever

C. whichever

D. whenever

答案是 B。

21. —How did you find        party?

—Do you mean Marry's birthday party? It was        terrific party.

A. a; the

B. the; /

C. /; a

D. the; a

22. —Can I buy a Friday's plane ticket for London?

—I'm sorry, but there are no tickets        for Friday's flight

A. possible

B. present

C. acceptable

D. available

23.        our arriving at the airport, we were given a warm welcome by the local people.

A. With

B. At

C. Upon

D. Until

24. The manager expected to be kept        of how our business was going on.

A. informed

B. informing

C. to be informed

D. to be

informing

25. \_\_\_\_\_ is reported in the newspaper, talks between the two countries are making progress.

- A. It                                      B. As                                      C. That                                      D. What

26. It was because he failed in the exam \_\_\_\_\_ he dared not see his father.

- A. that                                      B. when                                      C. why                                      D. so

27. How many vehicles were \_\_\_\_\_ the crash.

- A. involving in                              B. involved in                              C. involved                                      D. involving

28. --- Nancy is not coming tonight.

--- But she \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. promises                                      B. promised                                      C. will promise                                      D. had promised

29. \_\_\_\_\_ interests me most in the world is the natural beauty of Guilin.

- A. That                                      B. Which                                      C. it                                      D. What

30. Nothing \_\_\_\_\_ after the terrible fire which had been caused by someone smoking in bed.

- A. continued                                      B. kept                                      C. left                                      D. remained

第一节 完形填空 （共 10 小题；每小题 1 分，满分 10 分）

阅读下面短文，掌握其大意，然后从第 31 至第 40 小题所给的 A、B、C、D 四个选项中，选出最佳选项，并在答题卡上将该项涂黑。

Yesterday the police were joined by more than 20 volunteers in the continuing search for the two missing teenagers, Vicky Gray and Tom Hunter, and their guide, Gavin Jones. The police said that they had 31 during an adventure tour of Cape York Peninsula.

This was the second day of the search and the police were now very 32 about the safety of the three missing people.

The police said that the search had 33 a wide area, but the rainforest was thick and their work was made harder by the recent rain. Later on Chief Inspector (警官) Roger Fleet said, "The travelers had a radio with them. 34 they had been in trouble, they would have called us."

The three travelers left Cooktown very early on Saturday morning in a Toyota car. They took a small dirt road that 35 down to the Daintree River, a dangerous river full of crocodiles (鳄鱼). Chief Inspector Roger Fleet said the tourists wouldn't have got into trouble if they had stayed on the main 36.



A 37 of Vicky and Tom was found by a policeman under the “Be Careful about crocodiles” sign near the river. 38 was the photo left behind? This is just one of the unanswered questions. Other questions are: Why was the *Toyota* 39 and locked at the edge of the rainforest? The police said that the travelers had left a map of the area behind. Why? Why had someone drawn a cross on the point (地点) where the car is? Is this a sign? What does it mean? If anyone can give information 40 has seen these three young people, contact the local police in Cooktown.

- |                    |                 |                |                |
|--------------------|-----------------|----------------|----------------|
| 31. A. lost        | B. missed       | C. disappeared | D. escaped     |
| 32. A. worried     | B. disappointed | C. angry       | D. nervous     |
| 33. A. experienced | B. got          | C. made        | D. covered     |
| 34. A. Because     | B. If           | C. In case     | D. Even though |
| 35. A. turns       | B. falls        | C. gets        | D. runs        |
| 36. A. highway     | B. path         | C. road        | D. beach       |
| 37. A. photo       | B. book         | C. phone       | D. shoe        |
| 38. A. How         | B. Why          | C. What if     | D. How come    |
| 39. A. stopped     | B. parked       | C. came        | D. found       |
| 40. A. or          | B. and          | C. so          | D. but         |

### 第三部分 阅读技能 (共三节; 满分 35 分)

#### 第一节 阅读理解 (共 12 小题; 每小题 2 分, 满分 24 分)

阅读下列短文, 从每题所给的 A、B、C、D 四个选项中, 选出最佳选项, 并在答题卡上将该项涂黑。

#### A

现在城市带给我们的不安全感越来越重, 作者一家为了摆脱城市的生活, 举家搬迁到一个海边小镇, 如是, 他们有得有失。他们失去了什么? 得到了什么?

To “sacrifice” means to give up something in exchange for something better. We decided to make a sacrifice and exchange city life and move to a seaside village with our children aged 9 and 3 years old. We had a beautiful home and plenty of money but little real security because crime was on the increase every day. We never knew if we would all make it safely home at night.

We were very happy in our new town but life was very difficult economically. Income is based on the tourist seasons and jobs are few and far between (稀少). There is a local saying

"How do you make a small fortune on the Garden Route? Arrive with a big one." Although many of the long-standing residents are well off, it is a very competitive environment for newcomers. We have had to adjust to an enormous extent over the past four years.

Reading the newspapers from the big cities assured us that we had made the right choice. However, it was not always easy to explain to the children why they could no longer have what they were used.

However, our little daughter put it all into perspective (观点) one day. Our visiting friend's son preferred riding in the back of our beat up (年久失修的) little 'bakkie' (pickup 小卡车) to his father's big Mercedes. Our little daughter called me and said, "Mom, please help me to explain to James that he is wrong. He says that 'today, if you don't have money you are nothing.' I know that is not true. If you do have money you share it with your friends and if they don't have money and you do, you share it with them. That is what makes us all rich." It made me realize that the sacrifice was well worth it.

41. What was the reason for the family to move away from the city?

- A. They were tired of the city life.
- B. The city was not safe enough.
- C. People in the city were not friendly.
- D. Life in the city was expensive.

42. What can you guess the writer probably read in the newspapers?

- A. Something about the city's problems.
- B. Something about the city's development.
- C. Something about the city's great changes.
- D. Something about the city's attractions.

43. What does the underlined word "Mercedes" probably refer to?

- A. A kind of car.
- B. A kind of bike.
- C. A kind of animal.
- D. A kind of toy.

44. What did the family gain because of their sacrifice according to the writer?

- A. They had a beautiful home in the seaside village.
- B. They made a lot of money in the tourist seasons.
- C. The parents got very good jobs on the Garden Route.

D. The children developed shared value.

## B

And the Lord spoke to Noah and said: "In six months I'm going to make it rain until the whole earth is covered with water and all the evil people are destroyed. But I want to save a few good people, and two of every kind of living thing on the planet. I am ordering you to build Me an Ark."

And in a flash of lightning he delivered the specifications for the Ark.

"OK," said Noah, trembling in fear.

And six months passed. The skies began to cloud up and rain began to fall. The Lord saw that Noah was sitting in his front yard, weeping. And there was no Ark.

"Noah," shouted the Lord, "where is my Ark?" A lightning bolt crashed to the ground next to Noah.

"Lord, please forgive me!" begged Noah. "I did my best. But there were big problems.

First I had to get a building permit for the Ark construction project.

Then I had a big problem getting enough wood for the Ark because there was a ban on cutting trees to save the Spotted Owl. I had to convince U.S. Fish and Wildlife that I needed wood to save the owls. But they wouldn't let me catch any owls. So no owls.

Then the carpenters formed a union and went out on strike. I had to negotiate a settlement with the National Labor Relations Board before anyone would pick up a saw or hammer. Now we have 16 carpenters going on the boat and still no owls.

Then I started gathering up animals, and got sued (控告) by animal rights group. They objected to me taking only two of each kind.

Right now I'm still trying to resolve a complaint from the Equal Employment Opportunity Commission over how many Croatians (克罗地亚人) I'm supposed to hire, the IRS (美国国税局) has seized all my assets claiming I'm trying to avoid paying taxes by leaving the country, and I just got a notice from the state about owing some kind of use tax.

I really don't think I can finish your Ark for at least another five years," Noah wailed.

The sky began to clear. The sun began to shine. A rainbow arched across the sky.

Noah looked up and smiled. "You mean you're not going to destroy the earth?" Noah asked, hopefully.

"No," said the Lord sadly, "Government already has".

45. What will Lord use Ark for?

- |                              |                          |
|------------------------------|--------------------------|
| A. To save the earth.        | B. To destroy the earth. |
| C. To save some good people. | D. To save Lord Himself. |

46. What is Noah's first problem?

- |                               |                                       |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| A. He can't get enough wood.  | B. He needs to get a building permit. |
| C. He can't get enough labor. | D. He can't get enough animals.       |

47. What conclusion can we draw from the passage?

- A. That Noah makes Ark will good to the earth.
- B. Lord finds some problems with the society.
- C. Noah objects to making Ark.
- D. People are not aware of protecting the earth.

48. What's the best title of the passage?

- |                         |                           |
|-------------------------|---------------------------|
| A. Noah's Trouble       | B. The Earth is in Danger |
| C. Noah in Modern Times | D. Lord Gets Angry        |

C

The Oakville pier collapsed Saturday afternoon at 3:30. Although hundreds of people were on the pier at the time of the collapse, no one was killed and only 15 people were injured. One person was seriously injured. That person was a 43-year-old man who suffered two broken legs, eight broken ribs, and a punctured lung.

Hundreds of people gathered around to watch the rescue efforts. Three local television stations and two radio stations broadcast live from the pier. The collapse occurred after a big rig (打井机) went out of control Saturday morning and slammed into one of the main supports for the pier.

For public safety reasons, a city council member wanted to close the pier immediately. However, local businesses on the pier and nearby protested. Oakville officials decided to wait until tomorrow before sending out a structural engineer to investigate the damage.

"The driver reeked of booze," said a police officer who had written the truck driver a ticket for driving under the influence. "He was so drunk that he didn't even apply his brakes before he crashed into the support. It's a miracle that he didn't kill someone," said the officer, who took the driver to jail.

City officials said it was too early to get a complete damage estimate, but that repairs to the pier would probably cost at least \$500,000 and take a month or more. The local business people are very unhappy because the repair process will significantly reduce consumer purchases for the summer season.

“We make 80 percent of our annual profits from June through September,” noted one T-shirt vendor. “This is going to hurt.”

49. When did the collapse occur?

- A. On Saturday morning.
- B. On Saturday afternoon.
- C. On Sunday morning.
- D. Unknown.

50. What does the underlined sentence “The driver reeked of booze” mean?

- A. The driver was too careless,
- B. The driver was so lucky.
- C. The driver was smelly because of overdrinking.
- D. The driver was very angry because of getting the ticket.

51. Which of the following statements is true?

- A. Sixteen people were killed in the accident.
- B. A police officer would investigate the collapse.
- C. The local people would unhappy because it injured so many people.
- D. Main profit of the local people was made in summer.

52. From the passage we can infer that \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. The pier played a very important role in local economy.
- B. It was rush hour when the collapse occurred.
- C. The government paid little attention to the collapse.
- D. The collapse caused great influence on people’s daily life.

第二节 回答问题（共 3 小题；每小题 2 分，满分 6 分）

阅读下面短文，根据第 53 至第 55 小题的具体要求，简要回答问题，并将答案转写到答题卡上。

Height is just one of the thousands of features your genes(基因)decide. In fact, because you have two parents, your genes provide you a height that usually lands somewhere between the height of each parent. If both your parents are tall, then most probably you will be tall, too, but if you have questions about how tall you're going to be, ask your doctor if he or she can help you find it out.

But genes don't decide everything. For example, eating an unhealthy diet can keep you from growing to your full potential(潜力). Getting plenty of sleep and enough exercise will help you grow to the expected height.

No doubt(怀疑) you're wondering how fast you should grow. It depends. There's no perfect or right answer. Generally speaking, kids grow about 2 inches (6 centimeters) a year between age 3 and the time when they start puberty (when your body starts changing and becoming more grown up).

Your doctor will know how your growth has been going over the years. Two centimeters here and 2 inches there are not nearly as important as the height you're at now, how you've been growing up to this point, and what other changes your body may be going through.

Don't be scared if you seem to have grown a lot in a very short time. Everyone has a growth spurt (高峰) during puberty. The age for starting puberty is about 10 for girls and about 11 for boys. But it can be earlier or later ---between 7 and 13 for girls and 9 and 15 for boys.

You'll usually begin to notice that you're growing faster about a year or so after your body starts to show the first changes of puberty.

53. What is the Chinese for the word "puberty"?

54. Whom will you turn to if you want to know how fast and how tall you should grow? (回答词数不超过 1 个)

55. What's the main idea of the passage? (回答词数不超过 8 个)

第三节 摘录信息 (共 5 小题; 每小题 1 分, 满分 5 分)

阅读下面短文, 根据所读内容在文后第 56 至第 60 小题的空格里填上适当的单词或短语, 并将答案转写到答题卡上。

注意: 每空不超过 3 个单词。

Bicycles are very popular around the world today. People ride their bicycles for exercise and enjoyment. In some places, people use a bicycle to get to work. In other places, bicycle riding is a very popular exercise to people who live in cities. But who invented the first bicycle?

In 1791, a Frenchman named Comte de Sivrac invented and owned the first bicycle. Mrs. Sivrac rode the bicycle in Paris. The handles (把手) and the seat were wooden. This bicycle was very difficult to move. A rider even had to pick up the front wheel to change direction. Finally, the bicycle had no brakes for stopping or pedals for the feet! Riding a bicycle was a great risk.

In 1817, a German named Baron von Drais de Sauerbrun made the first bicycle better. The seat became more comfortable. The wheel could now change direction. His ride in the forest took only one hour instead of three hours on foot, which surprised people at that time.

Sauerbrun brought this kind of bicycle from Germany to France. Then Denis Johnson, an Englishman, made a bicycle for women. It had space for their dresses to hang down. But these bicycles still had no brakes or pedals, and riders often got hurt. These bicycles and the people who rode them were not very popular.

It took another forty-five years for the bicycle to become popular. More than 100 years later, bicycle riding is more popular than ever. In fact, in India and China, there are still many more bicycles than cars.

### The Great Invention

Time	Names	Items	Features
In 1791	<u>56</u>	the first bicycle	Difficult to ride
<u>57</u>	Baron von Drais de Sauerbrun	the first bicycle made better	Easier to ride
Unknown	<u>58</u>	a <u>59</u>	Having space for dresses to hang down
Functions of riding bicycles---for exercise, <u>60</u> and transportation			

### 第四部分 写作技能（共两节，满分 25 分）

#### 第一节 完成译文（共 5 小题；每小题 2 分，满分 10 分）

根据中文原文完成下列各英文译文，将答案填写到答题卡上。（每空限填一个词）

61. 牛羊马主要以草为食。

Sheep, cows and horses \_\_\_\_\_ mainly \_\_\_\_\_ the green grass.

62. 据说这本书很值得一读。

It is said that the book is well \_\_\_\_\_ .

63. 他不仅失去了财富，他的自由也被限制了。

Not only did he lose his wealth, \_\_\_\_\_ his freedom was limited.

64. 我们明天是否野营，要看天气情况。

Whether we'll go camping tomorrow \_\_\_\_\_ the weather.

65. 我不知道怎样能把我的意思讲清楚。

I didn't know to \_\_\_\_\_ my idea \_\_\_\_\_.

第二节 情景作文（共 1 小题，满分 15 分）

根据下列信息提示，用英语写一篇 100 词左右的短文。

提示：1、赵芳的父母进城打工；2、赵芳和爷爷、奶奶留守农村。3、在学习上李华遇到一些困难；4、在老师和同学们的帮助下，她取得了进步。

要求：1、不要逐句翻译；2、文中请勿使用真实的姓名、校名、地名；3、书写规范、语句通顺、语法正确。

---

---

---



## 参 考 答 案

---

### 词汇部分

#### Module1 Unit 1

##### A 组

1—5 BADCB 6—10 CDABB 11—15 CDACB

##### B 组

1. earn respect 2. more than 3. way of life 4. sounds like 5. regret to inform 6. for free  
7. develop ... interest 8. Upon entering

##### C 组

1. experienced 2. pleased; pleasant/pleasing 3. broadcast 4. introduce 5. continue  
6. achievements 7. regret; regretful 8. challenging 9. preparing 10. informed

#### Module1 Unit 2

##### A 组

1—5 CDCBB 6—10 BACDD 11—15 CBCBA

##### B 组

1. with which 2. goes unpunished 3. a mess 4. like crazy 5. felt like talking  
6. can't wait to 7. expect; from 8. looks as though/if

##### C 组

1. explanation 2. rude 3. slamming 4. adults 5. selfish

#### Module1 Unit 3

##### A 组

1—5 DBDBC 6—10 ACBBA 11—15 AABBB

解析: 14. than supposed 是 they are supposed 的省略, 意思是“比估计的”, 所以答案是 B。

##### B 组

1. a good amount 2. full of energy 3. works out 4. be ashamed of/be embarrassed about

5. In no time 6. so do 7. as you are

**C 组**

1. properly 2. failure 3. harmful 4. embarrassed 5. regularly 6. achievement  
7. recognize 8. concentrate 9. attracted 10. relaxed

**Module 2 Unit 1**

**A 组**

1—5 BBDDD 6—10 CABAB 11—15 ABD CB

**B 组**

1. ran after 2. ruled out 3. making up 4. on average 5. stay out 6. causes...to become

**C 组**

1. to carry out 2. puzzled 3. frightening 4. convinced 5. lately 6. exist 7. sunken  
8. to explore 9. left empty 10. disappointed

**Module 2 Unit 2**

**A 组**

I. 1. to 2. with 3. with 4. on 5. by; on 6. in; with 7. over 8. at 9. on 10. in

II. 1—5 BBDBA 6—10 BAABC

**B 组**

1. whatever we decided 2. could travel 3. feed on 4. home to 5. looking forward to

**C 组**

1. harmony 2. dusty 3. silence 4. government 5. surrounded

**Module 2 Unit 3**

**A 组**

I. 1. on 2. as 3. in 4. on 5. for 6. in 7. for 8. about 9. at 10. in

II. 1—5 ADDDA 6—10 BDABC

**B 组**

1. pays off 2. do with 3. is qualified for 4. breathed in 5. related to 6. During his lifetime 7. lived/realized his dream 8. look up to

**C 组**

1. explorer 2. adventurous 3. artists 4. discovery 5. Strangely 6. scientific 7. survivors 8. westerners 9. explanation 10. organizations

**Module 3 Unit1**

**A 组**

1—5 BABCD 6—10 ADBDD 11—15 ABBBB

**B 组**

1. is likely to 2. making his way 3. had finished writing 4. couldn't help crying  
5. found herself lying 6. fall asleep

**C 组**

1. watch out for 2. reached out 3. was frozen with 4. in sight 5. getting...across  
6. wish for 7. make sense 8. glanced at 9. pay back 10. make the most of

**Module 3 Unit 2**

**A 组**

1—5 ACCBC 6—10 BCAAB

**B 组**

1. contribution to 2. impact on 3. resulted in/led to 4. despite his illness 5. the upper class  
6. sitting opposite 7. confused me 8. mixing me up

**C 组**

1. vocabulary 2. European 3. throughout 4. official 5. create

**Module 3 Unit 3**

**A 组**

1—5 CCBBC 6—10 BBBCC

**B 组**

1. to do 2. on board 3. audience's attention 4. in memory of 5. remained 6. attack on  
7. feel free 8. is located

**C 组**

1. civilized 2. magnificent 3. cause 4. housed 5. wealthy 6. discovery 7. ruins  
8. remaining 9. destruction 10. director

**Module 4 Unit 1**

**A 组**

- 1—5 DCBAC 6—10 AACBA

**B 组**

1. into buying 2. is intended/meant for 3. to living 4. be convenient for 5. satisfied his boss.  
6. protect... from

**C 组**

1. advertisement 2. advertising 3. information 4. attracting 5. attention 6. story  
7. continued 8. remember 9. product 10. dangers 11. translation 12. photographs  
13. appeared 14. company 15. sales

**Module 4 Unit 2**

**A 组**

- 1—5 BBABA 6—10 DABBD

解析:

9. B save one's energy 意为“积蓄力量”，从前文的 have a good rest 可以推出下文应选用能表达这一含义的短语。  
10. D appearance “出现”。escape 逃跑，absence 缺席，根据句子后面的 good indication of better environment. 可将 A、B 排除；attendance 出席，一般指接受邀请或要求而主动参加，与题意不符。句子意思为：环境学家说野山羊在大草原的出现说明环境变好了。

**B 组**

1. compete for 2. every four years 3. in honour/memory of 4. are delighted  
5. was recognized as 6. public attention 7. played; role/part 8. contributions to

**C 组**

1. medals 2. flags 3. ceremony 4. occasion 5. competition 6. opening 7. flame 8. rings

9. band 10. matter 11. teams 12. stadium 13. leave 14. products 15. photographs

**Module 4 Unit 3**

**A 组**

1—5 BCCBC 6—10 CADDD

**B 组**

1. was accused of 2. set up 3. but not 4. Upon reaching 5. bring history alive

6. Scared and cold

**C 组**

1. characters 2. voice 3. opportunity 4. popularity 5. rescuing

**Module 5 Unit 1**

**A 组**

1—5 CDACD 6—10 DDDAA

**B 组**

1. without hesitation 2. in the world 3. regardless of 4. absorbed in reading

5. getting along with 6. keep her word 7. yell at 8. felt guilty about

**C 组**

1. feel like 2. in public 3. are determined to 4. couldn't help 5. get through 6. be proud of 7. trapped in 8. consistent with 9. persuade 10. would rather

**Module 5 Unit 2**

**A 组**

1—5 BDBBA 6—10 BBDAD

解析:

1. 此题实际上考察 remain 作为不及物动词的用法，表示“尚待，留待”，see 与主语从句之间是动宾关系，故用 to be seen 作宾语，答案选 B。

6. find out 表示查明（真相等），发现，pick out 表示精选，挑选，look out 表示留神，照料，speak out 表示大声说出、大胆地说。根据题意“这张照片是在很久前拍摄的，我想你是否能认出我父亲。”故选 B。

7. 根据题意，考察的是 appreciate 用作及物动词，后接动名词的用法，故选 B。

### B 组

1. be cut off 2. took the floor 3. under way 4. can't stand doing 5. the height of

6. cut back on 7. a lasting effect 8. the way that

### C 组

1. showing...concern about 2. a diverse range of 3. take the floor 4. seen as 5. resulted in

6. wipe out 7. is stocked with 8. is ...willing to 9. are prohibited from 10. grow to

## Module 5 Unit 3

### A 组

1—5 BBCAC 6—10 ACBBBD

### B 组

1. in praise of 2. am desperate to 3. get involved in 4. The majority of 5. advocate building

6. push ahead with 7. is related to 8. for sale

### C 组

1. delivered 2. to meet the needs 3. interfere with 4. figure out 5. put...in place

6. mentioned 7. end up 8. following in the footsteps of 9. was in agreement with 10. the other day

## 语法部分

### 句子成分：

指出下列划线部属于何种句子成分：

- 1)主语, 谓语 2)谓语 3)主语, 宾语, 状语 4) 状语, 定语 5) 定语  
6) 定语, 定语 7) 表语 8) 表语 9) 表语 10) 宾语, 宾语补足语  
11) 宾语, 宾语补足语 12) 状语, 宾语, 宾语补足语 13) 主语, 表语, 状语  
14)主语, 谓语, 状语, 宾语补足语 15) 同位语

### 英文词类:

1) 指出下列句子中的划线词的词性:

- (1)代词, 动词, 限定词, 名词, 限定词, 名词, 副词  
(2)限定词, 名词, 副词, 动词, 限定词, 名词, 介词, 限定词, 名词  
(3)形容词, 名词, 动词, 副词, 介词, 代词, 连词, 代词, 动词, 动词, 限定词, 名词

2) 选择正确的词性填入空中, 补全句子:

- (1) economy, quickly (2) because of, tiredness (3) active (4) currently (5) Appearance, different, reality (6) actually (7) walks (8) Health, value (9) difficult (10) true

### 短语:

1) 指出划线的短语结构是哪种短语和作何种句子成分。

- (1) 动词短语作目的状语, 动词短语作谓语部分, 介宾短语作方式状语, 介宾短语作定语  
(2)介宾短语作地点状语, 动词短语作定语, 动词短语作谓语部分, 动词短语作目的状语  
(3)形容词短语作表语, 动词短语作伴随状语  
(4)名词短语作主语, 形容词短语作表语  
(5).名词短语作表语

2) 将下列中文短语翻译成英文

- (1) already disappear in the world  
(2) get out in the evening to hunt for food  
(3) be extraordinarily good at dealing with people  
(4) three inexperienced young people trapped in a big mountain

### 简单句:

- (1) Riding a bicycle is...

- (2) Their coming to Beijing surprised me.
- (3) Patience is very...
- (4) Carelessness cost...
- (5) Every person / Everybody / Everyone is...
- (6) To start his own tea business...
- (7) The flowers are / remain very...
- (8) People have wished to...
- (9) The...attacks happening in this area...proves...
- (10) What easy problems they are! / How easy the problems are!

2) 用简单句型翻译下列中文句子:

- (1) Hundreds of years ago the locals spoke another language.
- (2) I would like you to come to my birthday party.
- (3) They remain friendly to me.
- (4) The shop keeper offered us a lower price.
- (5) The news spread to the town.

时态: BBADC BDBCB AABCB

情态助动词: CABDC ACCDD CCACB

非谓语动词：

1) 更正下列句中动词错误:

- (1) people watching                                              (2) It's very difficult for foreigners to learn English.
- (3) To find a place / Finding a place                  (4) she was hit by a car
- (5) she got her father to buy her a / For her to learn     (6) interested                 (7) embarrassing
- (8) to believe         (9)in listening                 (10) repairing                 (11) live
- (12) With his sister to get married / Because his sister practise                 (13) her taking                 (14)To



(15) to talk to / with

2) 将下列各句中的从句改造成非谓语动词短语:

(1) When serving a / Serving a (2) Having passed all (3) Still being dependent

(4) Inspired by (5) The weather becoming fine (6) Hearing the news

(7) Having opened (8) in order to catch/ to catch

主谓一致:

(1) are used (2) is not good (3) is my (4) were having (5) is one (6) has a

(7) speak (8) Is all (9) A number...were planted (10) is enough

倒装:

(1) Out rushed the children.

(2) Look! Here comes the bus!

(3) So busy is she that she has no time to spare.

(4) He is not coming. Neither am I.

(5) Few friends **does he have** in the town.

(6) In no case will we give up our efforts.

(7) With nobody helping around I still managed to get the stuck car movingt.

(8) Not until I woke up did I find him gone.

定语从句:

(1) who will announce the result

(2) that / which the little kids can sit on; on which the little kids can sit

(3) who wears a flower in her hair

(4) that / which has been donated by the town

(5) that / which were being painted

(6) who / that seem to have come from other parts of the country

(7) whose brother called to ask where he was

状语从句:

1) 更正下列状语从句中的错误

(1)去掉 there (2) so 改 such (3)去掉 will (4)unless 改 if 或 Join 前加 Don't (5)去掉 although 或 but

(6) while 改 when (7) while 改 when (8) when 改 as (9)去掉从句中 will (10)去掉从句中 would

2) 选择正确的答案 BBAAC AABAB ADACB

名词性从句:

(1)What he phoned me about was

(2) where we met...

(3) Whatever was said here

(4) whoever is caught...

(5) how you approach...

(6) why the cloth...

(7)...That's because he was found.../ ...The reason is that he was found...

(8) That you arrived unexpectedly

(9) that they will be aided by...

(10) My doubt whether he had told me his right age

It 用法和强调句

1—5 CDADB 6—10 ADDCD

## 写作部分

### 1. Notice 练习答案

#### Notice

Attention, please. I have some good news to tell you. We're going to have an English party in our classroom at 7:30 this Saturday evening. The program includes songs, recitations, storytelling and short plays. Everyone in our class must take part in it and students from other classes are also welcome. Everyone who takes part in the party should perform once.

That's all. Thank you.

### 2. Letter 练习答案

Dear Wang Hua,

I'm sorry to hear that you have been ill for several days. How are you feeling now?

I know that you are devoting all your energy to study. But I just want to say exercise is as important as study. Doing exercise will not waste your time. Instead, it can refresh your mind. After one or two hours' exercise, you can study more effectively. Only when you have a strong body can you keep on studying without feeling bad. Otherwise your study will be affected by your health.

I hope you can take at least one hour's exercise every day after you recover from your illness. I hope you will be well soon.

Yours truly

Ling Ping

### 3. E-mail 练习答案

Tom,

I have read your e-mail. I am very glad to know that you will come to Qingdao.

I am going to have a one-month holiday after the exam. We can spend our holidays together. We can go swimming, go fishing, climb the hills and enjoy many kinds of delicious seafood. We can also visit our beautiful city and I hope you will love her.

At the same time we may learn languages from each other. By the way, please tell me your flight number and the arriving time. I will meet you at the airport.

Good luck!

### 4. Diary 练习答案

Tuesday    October 28<sup>th</sup>

Sunny

This morning I went to school in a hurry after breakfast. On the way to our school, I saw a building was on fire. Immediately I phoned the fire police station. I knew the number is 119. The firemen came here very soon. Several minutes later, the fire was put out. When I arrived at school, class had already begun. After I told my teacher and classmates what had happened on my way to school, my teacher praised me. I said, "The heroic deeds of the firemen are more worthy of praising."

### 5. Speech 练习答案

Boys and girls,

My speech is about how to make friends.

Everyone needs friends. But how to make true friends is very important to everyone.

Firstly, to make friends, you must be friendly to others. You should do your best to make a stranger feel at home, no matter where he is. And you don't judge a stranger only by his appearance. You should think more of others than of yourselves.

Secondly, if you don't agree with others on a certain matter, don't argue but talk with them.

Finally, don't believe those who leave their friends when they are in trouble because, as the saying goes, "A friend in need is a friend indeed."

That's all. Thank you!

### 模拟试题（一）

#### 第一部分 听力技能（共两节，每小题 1 分，满分 20 分）

1—5 BABCA 6—10 BCBA 11—15 CCBCC 16—17 BA

18. Chinatown 19. by bus 20. 7:00 tomorrow morning

#### 第二部分 知识运用（共两节，每小题 1 分，满分 20 分）

21—25 CACCA 26—30 BACAC

31—35 BADBC 36—40 ABADC

#### 第三部分 阅读技能（共三节；满分 35 分）

41—44 DADD 45—48 ADDA 49—52 BDAA

53. kind and helpful

54. Because he couldn't see kindness and compassion in their eyes.

55. He will try to help others whole-heartedly from now on even if he is busy.

56. Birthday traditions 57. Britain 58. fifteen 59. a new kimono 60. a key

#### 第四部分 写作技能（共两节，满分 20 分）

第一节 完成译文（共 5 小题；每小题 2 分，满分 10 分）

61. of losing 62. nowhere to 63. One such 64. purpose of 65. was spoiled

第二节 情景作文（共 1 题；满分 15 分）

One possible version:

## The Importance of Water

As we know, plants and animals need water. So do people's life and production. Life couldn't go on without water. With the rapid development of agriculture and industry, more and more water is needed. However, water is becoming scarce in many places. What's more, a lot of rivers and lakes are beginning to be polluted by the waste water from factories. Fish can't live in them any longer. At the same time, the waste water does great harm to people's health.

In order to make rivers and lakes clean and prevent them from being polluted, we must take measures to stop it and fight a battle all kinds of pollution.

### 听力录音材料

#### Text1

M: Right, class. There're some changes to your exam timetable. Your math exam will be changed to the next day.

W: You mean the 18th?

M: Yes, and the exam will start and end one hour earlier.

#### Text2

M: What about bringing Michael along to the meeting?

W: That isn't such a bad idea.

#### Text3

W: Do you prefer tea or coffee after lunch?

M: I don't care for tea that much and I only drink coffee in the evening.

#### Text4

W: Don't spend too long at the bookstore. It's a quarter to 12.

M: It's OK. We have 45 minutes before the train leaves.

#### Text5

W: Hey, aren't you cold without a coat?

M: Well, yes, actually! I can't find my jacket, I think I must have left it somewhere in the hotel.

#### Text6

M: Hello. Could I speak to Mr. Smith's secretary, please?

W: Yes. It's Mr. Smith's secretary speaking.

M: Oh, hello, this is Mr. Green's Service in London.

W: What can I do for you?

M: Well, my boss Mr. Green is coming out to Tokyo in the first week of December and I want to check whether you know he is coming.

W: I did already know about it, he's coming for the conference.

M: That's right, and he would really like to take up Mr Smith's offer to visit the factory.

W: When would it suit you? The conference will be running from Tuesday to Thursday.

M: Er, well, either Monday or Friday would be good. Which day do you think would be better for Mr. Smith?

W: Er, as far as he's concerned, Monday will be fine.

M: Oh, Monday. That's great.

Text7

M: It's a cold day, isn't it?

W: Oh, yes, isn't it? My feet are freezing! I wish that bus would come!

M: Have you been waiting long?

W: It feels like hours—but I suppose I've only been here ten minute or so.

M: That's long enough in this weather. This is too bad. I hate winter.

W: So do I. And this morning the sun was shining and they were saying light rain.

M: I've been calling the weather report all day since it started to snow. They're still saying one or two inches but we've got at least three inches already. My shoes are full of snow.

W: Well, that's true. Remember last year when they said four inches of snow and we ended up with four feet?

M: I wasn't here last year, but we had the same thing in Detroit. We were supposed to get a little rain one night, but when we woke up, guess what? There were six inches of snow on the ground and it was still coming down hard. I didn't go to work that day.

W: Well, if it's really bad, I won't go in to the office tomorrow—I'll work at home.

M: Of course, if it is possible. Oh, look, there is the bus.

W: I'm glad to see that bus.

Text8

W: Hello, Old English Restaurant. Can I help you?

M: Yes. I'd like to book a table for tonight.

W: Yes, sir. What time?

M: Eight o'clock.

W: Certainly. For how many people?

M: There are ten of us.

W: Ten of you! But we don't usually accept large parties, sir.

M: I know, but we are regular customers.

W: What's your name, sir?

M: Michael Peterson.

W: Mr. Peterson... of course! That'll be all right. We'll put two tables together.

M: Thanks.

W: What food would you prefer for today, sir? We have fresh seafood tonight.

M: No. We like to eat vegetables.

Text9

M: Fill it up with regular petrol, please.

W: All right. Should I have a look at the tires(轮胎), too?

M: Yes, please.

W: The tires need some air.

M: How much do I owe you?

W: It comes to \$19. 95.

M: OK. Here is a 50-dollar bill.

W: Here is your change. It's \$30. 05.

M: Thank you.

Text10

Hello, boys and girls! Here is some information about our trip to Chinatown. We'll go there by bus. It's a long trip, over 4 hours. So we have to start early. The bus will wait for you at the school gate at 7:00 tomorrow morning. We'll take some bread, water and apples for lunch with us and we will eat together in a park. After that we will walk around the old market. You will be able to buy all your presents there. We will meet at the place where our bus stops. If you are lost, please give me a call. My mobile phone number is 13726156656. Any questions? OK. See you tomorrow.

### 模拟试题（二）

#### 第一部分 听力技能（共两节，每小题 1 分，满分 20 分）

1—5 ACCBA 6—10 BBCAB 11—15 CACBB 16—17 AB

18. 9 a.m. 19. the washing-up 20. 4:30

#### 第二部分 知识运用（共两节，每小题 1 分，满分 20 分）

21—25 DDCAB 26—30 ABBDD

31—35 CADBD 36—40 CABBA

#### 第三部分 阅读技能（共三节；满分 35 分）

41—44 BAAD 45—48 CBBC 49—52 DCDA

53. 生长发育期 54. Doctors 55. How the genes work in your body.

56. Comte de Sivrac 57. In 1817 58. Denis Johnson 59. bicycle for women

60. enjoyment

#### 第四部分 写作技能（共两节，满分 25 分）

第三节 完成译文（共 5 小题；每小题 2 分，满分 10 分）

61. feed; on 62. worth reading 63. but also 64. depends on 65. get; across

第四节 情景作文（共 1 题；满分 15 分）

One possible version:

Zhao Fang is my classmate, and her parents go to the city to work, so she lives with her grandparents. She missed her parents very much, and she was always dreaming in class. She often couldn't finish her work on time, and thus she was left behind in studies. Our teachers



were all worried about her. All our teachers and classmates held a discussion about how to improve her studies, and made a plan to help her. We all try our best. Now she has made great progress, and we feel very happy.

### 听力录音材料

#### Text1

W: What size do you wear?

M: Twelve.

W: Oh, you're lucky. We have just the right size in store. Here it is. Why don't you try it on?

#### Text2

W: I hear there is a good Japanese restaurant nearby. Would you like to go there for lunch?

M: Yes, but it is my treat this time.

#### Text3

M: Do you think you're in the right job, Anne?

W: Oh, yes. I think my job is just right for me.

#### Text4

W: I wanted to buy Tom a gift for his birthday, but it has already passed.

M: It's not too late, you know. You can still buy one.

#### Text5

M: Does your television need to be repaired?

W: No, my telephone needs to be repaired.

#### Text6

M: Jane, I hear that you are leaving school now. What do you want to do? Have you made up your mind yet?

W: No, not yet. But I think I'm going to take up singing.

M: Any special reasons?

W: Yes. It's because I am good at singing. All my classmates say so. Besides, singing is quite interesting and you will meet a lot of people.

M: And you will have to please them too.

W: Well, you do in any job, don't you?

M: And what do your parents think about it?

W: They don't quite agree with me. That's the only trouble.

M: Have they got any other plans for you, then?

W: Yes, um... they try to send me to art college because they want me to be an actress.

M: Then what will you do?

W: Er... I haven't decided yet. But I usually get my own way in the end.

Text7

W: Hi, David. You look worried. What's the matter?

M: I've been thinking about my job and I'm upset.

W: Why?

M: Well, I need to find a part-time job to help support myself through school, and now I was offered a job at a restaurant last week, but I don't like it.

W: How come?

M: It doesn't sound interesting.

W: How much will they pay you?

M: £ 3.50 an hour.

W: Is it far from the school?

M: Not very. It's about twenty minutes walk.

W: Well, I'd take it I were you. You've been searching for a job nearly a month and this is the first one you've found.

M: But it doesn't suit me. Don't you think I might find a better job somewhere?

W: It is possible, take a long time. You can first take this job and then when you find a better one, you can make a change.

M: Hmm, that sounds like a good idea. I'll think about it.

Text8

W: Hello. I'm Kate. May I have your name, please?

M: I'm Mick. Very glad to meet you.

W: Me, too. Where are you from, Mick?

M: I'm from Canada. It seems that you are from New York.

W: How do you know that?

M: From your accent.

W: But, I'm not a New Yorker.

M: Then, where are you from?

W: I'm from Chicago.

M: Where's that?

W: It's to the west of New York.

M: Have you got a map to show me? I'm puzzled.

Text9

W: Hello, my name's Helen and I have a friend Mary, whose son Peter is taking guitar lessons from you, and she suggested I call you.

M: OK. Will the lessons be for yourself or a child?

W: They will be for myself.

M: Fine. Have you ever learned music before?

W: Well, six years ago, I studied the piano for about three months.

M: Good.

W: How much do the lessons cost?

M: We have a small group that meets on Monday and Wednesday evenings for two hours, which costs \$4 an hour. Then on Tuesdays and Thursdays, I give private lessons which cost \$8 an hour.

W: OK. I can come on Wednesdays.

Text10

Good morning, ladies and gentlemen,

Welcome to our school. My name is Andrew Brown. I'm a history teacher. I'll give you a quick introduction to the school before I show you around. Our school is called a "free school". This means that the pupils are free to choose what and how they want to learn.

The school opens at 9:00 am, but the children can arrive whenever they like. Most of them are in school by ten.

If you look through the door of that big room you'll see those children reading and drawing there.

After lunch it's someone else's job to do the washing-up. This job is unpopular. After lunch the children go on with what they've been doing until 4:30 p.m..

湖南省教育厅版权所有  
www.hunanedu.net  
免费赠送